



New Hello!

SUN & MOON

3

Mr. Waleed El-Sharawy



Unit (1)

Visitors to Egypt

Lessons 1&2

★ Vocabulary ★

visitor	زائر
tourist	سائح
Egypt	مصر
conversation	محادثة
bazaar	سوق - بازار
snorkelling	الغطس
windsurfing	ركوب الأمواج
scuba diving	الغطس تحت الماء
youth hostels	نزل - بيوت الشباب
a great time	وقت ممتع
hotel	فندق
camp	معسكر
the tourist information centre	مركز المعلومات السياحية
police station	مركز الشرطة
Hurghada	الغردقة
place	مكان
city	مدينة
beach	شاطئ
holiday	أجازة
different places	أماكن مختلفة
spring	الربيع
find out	يعرف - يكتشف
find out about	يعرف معلومات عن
information	معلومات
boat trip	رحلة بالقارب
souvenir	هدية تذكارية
brochure = booklet	كتيب
direction	اتجاه
recipe	وصفة (للطعام)

recommendation	توصية
part	جزء
modern	حديث
wonderful	رائع
comfortable	مريح
cheaper	أرخص من
windy	عاصف
definitely	بالتحديد - حتما
stay	يقيم - يمكث
a good idea	فكرة جيدة
followed by	متبوعة بـ
sun cream	كريم للشمس
in five minutes	خلال خمس دقائق
in ten minutes	في غضون عشر دقائق
outside	بالخارج
fall over	يسقط - يقع أرضاً
hurt	يؤلم - يؤذي
fire	نار - حريق
washing machine	غسالة
younger	أصغر من
take photos	يأخذ صور
canal	قناة - ترعة
island	جزيرة
around	حول
port	ميناء
passport	جواز سفر
guidebook	دليل سياحي
walk in the sun	يمشى تحت أشعة الشمس
equipment	معدات (كلمة لا تعد)
breathe	يتنفس



★ Conjugation of verbs ★

Present	Meaning	Past	P.P
fall	يقع / يسقط	fell	fell
hurt	يؤلم/يؤذي/يجرح	hurt	hurt
wear	يرتدى	wore	worn
catch	يقبض على/يلحق بـ	caught	caught
go	يذهب	went	gone
have	يملك	had	had
take	ياخذ	took	taken
buy	يشترى	bought	bought
forget	ينسى	forgot	forgotten
hear	يسمع	heard	heard
do	يفعل	did	done
find out	يكشف	found out	found out
teach	يعلم	taught	taught

★ Prepositions ★

in the spring	في فصل الربيع	walk in the sun	يمشى تحت أشعة الشمس
for a holiday	من أجل قضاء أجازة	arrive in	يصل لـ(مكان كبير)
stay in / at + مكان	يقيم في / يمكث في	arrive at	يصل لـ(مكان صغير)
stay with + شخص	يقيم مع ..	on a bus	بالاتوبيس / في الاتوبيس
in the middle of	في منتصف / في وسط	used to + inf.	أعتاد أن ..
fall over	يسقط أرضاً	pay for	يدفع

★ Verbs & Nouns ★

go	fishing - diving - snorkelling - scuba diving - shopping - swimming - camping - for a walk - on a tour - to a concert - into the country - to bed - running - jogging - cycling
visit	historical building - ancient sites - bazaar - the old town - a public park - interesting places - temples - the castle
play	soccer - baseball - golf - squash - volleyball - tennis - hockey - football - basketball - ping pong - badminton
do	judo - karate - wrestling - aerobics - exercise - yoga - kung fu



★ Words & Opposites ★

youth	الشباب	The old	كبار السن
modern	حديث	ancient - old	قديم
outside	بالخارج	inside	بالداخل
expensive	غالى	inexpensive - cheap	غير غالى - رخيص
well	بصحة جيدة - حسناً	unwell	ليس بصحة جيدة
comfortable	مريح	uncomfortable	غير مريح
the old part	الجزء القديم - العتيق	the new part	الجزء الجديد/الحديث

★ Sports you can do ★

on the water	fishing	الصيد	rafting	التجديف
	yachting	الابحار بالياخت	boating	ركوب الزورق
	sailing	الابحار	windsurfing	ركوب الأمواج
in the water	snorkelling	الغطس	scuba diving	الغطس
	fin swimming	العوام بزعانف	Water gymnastics	الجمباز المائي
	swimming	العوام	diving (<i>underwater</i>)	الغوص

★ Definitions ★

- bazaar	A market or a group of shops - a place where you can go shopping.
- police station	An office for people who catch thieves.
- snorkelling	Swimming with equipment to breathe with your head in the water.
- youth hostel	An inexpensive place where young people can stay when they are travelling.
- brochure	A small magazine that have pictures and information on a product or a company.
- guidebook	A book that gives information for visitors about the places of a country.
- souvenirs	Something you buy or keep to help you remember a holiday or special event.
- windsurfing	A sport you can do on the water.
- the tourist information centre	An office where one can know about a city A building where tourists can find out about a place.



★ Reading ★

Dear Catherine,

I am so happy to hear that you and your family are visiting Hurghada in the spring! It is a wonderful place for a holiday. There is a lot to do and many different places to stay. You can camp, stay in a hotel or in the new youth hostel. It is very modern and comfortable, but much cheaper than the hotels. You can find out information at the tourist information centre. You should go there when you arrive. It is next to the police station in the middle of the new part of the city.

Hurghada has some beautiful beaches. When it is windy, you should definitely try windsurfing, too. Take a boat trip to the islands around Hurghada. You can go scuba diving or snorkeling. You can also go fishing from a boat.

You shouldn't walk too much in the sun. It is best to visit places early in the morning. Don't forget to go to the bazaar in the old part of the city. It is a good place to buy souvenirs. Have a great time!

Salma

Language notes

ملاحظات لغوية

1 – a good place for a holiday : مكان جيد لقضاء الأجازة

☞ Hurghada is a good place for a holiday.

2 – much cheaper than : أكثر رخصاً من

☞ Youth hostels are much cheaper than hotels.

3 – in the middle of : فى وسط

☞ The bank is in the middle of the city.

4 – beach : شاطئ / bank : ضفة نهر أو بحيرة

☞ Sharm has many beautiful beaches. ☞ We walked along the bank of the Nile.

5 – It is best to : من الأفضل أن

☞ It is best to revise early.

6 – present : هدية / prize : جائزة / souvenirs : هدايا تذكارية

☞ They gave her a lot of presents on her birthday.

☞ Ahmed Zewail won the Noble Prize. ☞ Tourist can buy souvenirs at bazaars.

7 - look for : يبحث عن / look after : يعتنى بـ / look forward to : يتطلع الى

☞ They are looking for the book.

☞ Mothers look after babies.

☞ I am looking forward to visiting Mecca.

8 - Journey : رحلة طويلة / trip : رحلة قصيرة أو عمل / flight : رحلة جوية / voyage : رحلة بحرية

☞ My father went on a business trip.

☞ Our voyage by ship was interesting.

☞ The flight by plane was comfortable.

☞ We went on a picnic last week.

☞ Boat tours are available daily.

☞ The journey was amazing.



Language Functions

الوظائف اللغوية

Asking for recommendations طلب النصيحة / توصية

- Do you recommend(going to the bazaar / a tour with a guide)?
- What is the best place to ...(buy a souvenir)?
- Is there a good place to ...(eat near the museum)?
- Where do you suggest ...(we start)?

Giving recommendations اعطاء النصيحة/ الرد على التوصية

- I recommend (a tour / you buy a guidebook).
- The best place to (buy souvenirs) is ...+ اسم المكان .
- The best place to (try traditional Egyptian food) is ..+ اسم المكان .
- You can (buy a guidebook) at the tourist information centre.

Giving a suggestion اعطاء اقتراح

- I suggest that (we do aerobics).
- I suggest ...(visiting the castle).
- Let's ...(visit the old part of the town).
- We could ...(go scuba diving).
- If I were you, I'd (would) ... (go to bed early).
- What (How) about ...(playing soccer / football)..?
- Why don't we (play soccer / football / volleyball)..?

- Accept قبول

- * That's a good idea.
- * It's a great idea.

- Refuse رفض

- * I'm sorry. I'm busy.
- * I'm sorry. I can't because....

Study the following



يوصى - يقرح - suggest - ينصح advise

1

advise + to / not to + مصدر
advise + that + جملة

- * He **advised** me **to** study my lessons.
- * He **advised** me **not to** smoke.
- * He **advised** that I **should** work hard.

2

suggest + الاسم / v+ing
recommend + الاسم / v+ing

- * Do you **recommend** **going** to the park?
- * I **suggest** **going** to the park.
- * Do you **recommend** **going** on a tour?
- * Do you **suggest** we **go** on a tour?

3

suggest + that + فاعل + should + مصدر
recommend + that + فاعل + should + مصدر
suggest + that + جملة
recommend + that + جملة

- * They **suggest** **that** I **should** go to the dentist.
- * They **recommend** **that** I **should** take a taxi.
- * They **suggest** **that** I **go** to the dentist.
- * They **recommend** **that** I **take** a taxi.

- لاحظ ممكن الاستغناء عن that :

* They **suggest** I go to New York.

* They **recommend** I go to New York.

- لاحظ اذا كان فاعل الجملة (I) لا نستخدم should

* I **suggest** that you **get** another job.



1-Complete the following dialogue

Ahmed : Welcome to Hurghada.

Tourist : Thank you. (1).....?

Ahmed : Yes, there are some very good shops near the market.

Tourist : What is the best place to buy souvenirs?

Ahmed : (2)

Tourist : Is there a good place to eat near the bazaar?

Ahmed : (3)

Tourist : (4)?

Ahmed : It serves a delicious Egyptian food.

2- Write what would you say in each of the following situations:

1- Your friend wants you to recommend a good place to visit.

.....

2- You suggest going to the park.

.....

3- Your friend asks you about the best place to buy souvenirs..

.....

4- You ask your friend the best time to leave.

.....

5- You recommend going for a picnic .

.....

6- You suggest playing football.

.....

7- Your friend suggests going to the cinema but you are busy.

.....

8 – You recommend visiting the museum.

.....

9 – You offer to help an old man.

.....

10 – You advise your brother not to smoke.

.....

3- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1- A Is much cheaper than a hotel.

a- hospital

b-youth hostel

c-school

d- clinic

2- You can find out information at the tourist information

a- centre

b- area

c- corner

d- wall



3-..... is a sport you can do on the water.

- a- Snorkeling b- Diving c- Windsurfing d- Swimming

4-Some people stay inbecause it's much cheaper than hotels.

- a- restaurant b- youth hostel c- bazaar d- hotel

5- You can take a boat to go

- a- windsurfing b- fishing c- snorkeling d- diving

6- Ali fell when he was playing sport. Now it hurts when he walks.

- a- at b- to c- below d- over

7- The restaurant you told us about was a very good We loved it.

- a- recipe b-commendation c- souvenir d- advice

8- Scientists find new kinds of medicine for flu.

- a- off b- out c- in d- on

9- is an underwater activity.

- a- Snorkeling b- Swimming c- Windsurfing d- Diving

10- A centre is a building where tourists can find out about a place.

- a- police station b- tourist information c- bazaar d- hostel

11- A an inexpensive place to stay on holiday.

- a- youth hostel b- police station c-bazaar d- shop

12- Ais a place where you can go shopping

- a- school b- bazaar c- library d- factory

13-A youth hostel is an/a place for the youth to stay when travelling.

- a- inexpensive b- expensive c- costly d- not cheap

14-A is an office for people who catch thieves.

- a- police station b- bus station c- metro station d- hotel

15- We use a to wash our clothes.

- a- sewing machine b- washing machine c- tractor d- mixture

16- Tourists like photos for the places they visit.

- a- drinking b- diving c- sleeping d- taking

17- the opposite of is inside.

- a- side b- inside c- outside d- site

18- Hotels are more than youth hostels.

- a- comfortable b- dangerous c- terrible d- horrible

19- Ali went

- a- snorkel b- snorkeled c- snorkelling d- snorkels

20- Do you recommend to the park?

- a- should go b- going c- went d- gone

21- If you don't know how to find a building, you can ask for

- a- discoveries b- detectives c- directions d-diagrams



22-Many tourists use a to learn about a city's history.

- a- camera b- bookshop c- guidebook d- ticket

23-You need a when you visit another country.

- a- passport b- tourist c- bazaar d- brochure

24-The restaurant you told us about was a good

- a- recipe b- recommendation c- souvenir d- advice

25- I enjoy stories.

- a- read b- to read c- reading d- be read

26- Windsurfing is a on water.

- a- match b- sport c- exercise d- athletic

27- When you go under water , you shouldn't go alone.

- a- diving b- shopping c- dancing d- club

28- Hurghada is a place for a holiday.

- a- ugly b- wonderful c- silly d- bad

29- We take our tents with us to near the mountain.

- a- climb b- count c- camp d- shop

30- The youth hostel is much than a hotel.

- a- expensive b- inexpensive c- cheap d- cheaper

31- I prefer staying in the new youth to staying in hotels.

- a- hotel b- club c- cinema d- hostel

32-The youth hostel is modern and

- a- comfortable b- uncomfortable c- ancient d- dirty

33-Tourists can find out information at the tourist information

- a- stop b-station c-centre d- bazaar

34-When I visit London, I usually stay at a

- a- hospital b- school c- hotel d- shop

35-He is an officer and he works in this police

- a- shop b- clinic c- university d- station

36-Hurghada has some beautiful to enjoy the sea there.

- a- beaches b- restaurants c- offices d- clubs

37-We can take boat to the islands around Hurghada.

- a- journey b- trip c- business d- travel

38-Tourists can go scuba or snorkelling.

- a- dive b- diver c- diving d- dived

39-Tourists can go to the to buy some souvenirs.

- a- hotel b- bazaar c- club d- boat

40- Catherine to Hurghada next spring.

- a- comes b- came c- would come d- is coming



- 41-The youth hostel is expensive than a hotel.
a- more b- less c- a lot d- much
- 42-The police station is in the new of the city .
a- part b- park c- bark d- bank
- 43- I want to pay my shopping in cash.
a- for b- at c- in d- by
- 44-Some tourists are so I should give them directions .
a- missed b- lost c- wasted d- lose
- 45-When the tourist loses his bag , he should go to the
a- beach b- hostel c- police station d- hotel
- 46-Tourst would like to visit places in Cairo.
a- historical b- history c- story d- historian
- 47-Find pictures that you can out in the
a- brochure b- butcher c- snorkelling d- scuba diving
- 49-They to Alex next month.
a- traveling b- travels c- are traveling d- traveled
- 50- When he was young, he stayed..... his family.
a- at b- for c- in d- with
- 51- It is to find a comfortable hotel.
a- a best b- best c- a most d- besting
- 52- The tourists were looking a comfortable hotel.
a - for b- after c- into d- like
- 53- Our by plane was very long.
a- voyage b- picnic c- cruise d- flight
- 54- Salma suggested diving.
a- go b- going c- goes d- went
- 55- Basant suggested that Ali a holiday.
a- take b- takes c- taking d- took
- 56- Ehab likes fish, I like it.....
a- either b- neither c- too d- as well as
- 57- You can take a boat to go
a- fishing b- windsurfing c- scuba diving d- running
- 59- There are a lot of buildings in Egypt.
a- history b- historical c- historian d- historically
- 60- I am a quiz about football.
a- doing b- do c- does d- did
- 61- I want to judo.
a- do b- go c- play d- swim



4- Rewrite the following using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning

- 1- Do you recommend going on a tour? (suggest)
.....
- 2- They suggest that I go to New York. (should)
.....
- 3- He suggested that we should go to Hurghada. (went)
.....
- 4- The youth hostel isn't more expensive than the hotel. (less)
.....
- 5- He suggested going to the cinema. (advised me)
.....

5-Read and correct the underlined words:

- 1- Windsurfing is an underwater activity. (.....)
- 2- The pyramids are history buildings. (.....)
- 3- Hurghada has some beautiful peaches. (.....)
- 4- Fishing is sports you can do in the water. (.....)
- 5-Do you recommend go to the park? (.....)
- 6- A post office is an office for people who catch thieves. (.....)
- 7- They visited fishing by the bank of the river last week. (.....)
- 8- You shouldn't talk too much in the sun. (.....)
- 9- She will come on five minutes. (.....)
- 10- When we visit a new place, we like to make photos. (.....)

6- Write a paragraph of SIX sentences on:

An interesting place you recommend to visit

The guiding words: Sharm El-Sheikh – beautiful place – by bus – a lot of friends – enjoy the weather – enjoy the water of the sea – stay in youth hostels – diving – wear sun cream – swimming – build sandcastle - a week

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



Unit (1)

Visitors to Egypt

Lessons 3&4

★ Vocabulary ★

village	قرية
map	خريطة
suggestion	اقتراح
a walk	تمشية
weather	طقس - جو
on a tour	في جولة
The country	الريف
concert	حفلة موسيقية
go shopping	يذهب للتسوق
ancient site	موقع قديم
historical building	مبنى تاريخي
garden	حديقة منزل
same things	نفس الشيء
recommend	يوصي
guide	مرشد
guidebook	دليل - كتاب إرشادي
museum	متحف
traditional	تقليدي
used to	إعتاد أن / تعود على
popular	محبوب/شعبي
pay for	يدفع (مال) من أجل
person	شخص
assistant	مساعد / باع
reasons	أسباب
tram ticket	تذكرة الترام
underwater activity	نشاط تحت الماء
under the water	تحت الماء
wear	يرتدي
wear sun cream	يضع كريم حماية من الشمس
expressions	تعابير

activities	انشطة
Don't worry	لا تهتم / لا تقلق
a boat trip	رحلة بالقارب
directions	اتجاهات
someone else	شخص آخر
passport	جواز سفر
archaeologist	عالم آثار
actor	ممثل
careful	حريص
ticket office	مكتب تذاكر
owner	مالك / صاحب شيء
discovery	اكتشاف
detective	مخبر سرى / محقق
diagram	رسم بياني
advice	نصيحة
wind	رياح
for the first time	لأول مرة
unless	إذا لم
possessions	ممتلكات
dolphin	الدولفين
far from	بعيداً عن
island	جزيرة
abbreviation	اختصار
take a break	يأخذ راحة / فسحة
light	خفيف
well	حسناً
clothes	ملابس
tourist attractions	اماكن جذب سياحي
traditional	تقليدي
draw a map	يرسم خريطة



★ Conjugation of verbs ★

Present	Meaning	Past	P.P
try	يحاول	tried	tried
count	يعد / يحسب	counted	counted
design	يصمم	designed	designed
forget	ينسى	forgot	forgotten
encourage	يشجع	encouraged	encouraged
look out	أحترس	looked out	looked out
understand	يفهم	understood	understood
leave	يغادر / يترك	left	left
speak	يتحدث	spoke	spoken
have	يمتلك / يتناول	had	had
bring	يحضر	brought	brought
think	يعتقد / يفكر	thought	thought
tell	يخبر	told	told
draw	يرسم	drew	drawn

★ Prepositions ★

ask for + noun.	يطلب	They asked for help.
important to + inf.	مهم أن	It's important to learn English.
look for	يبحث عن شيء	He looks for his keys.
look up	يبحث عن كلمة بقاموس	I looked up but I couldn't find it.
look after	يعتني بـ ..	Mother looks after her children.
for the second time	للمرة الثانية	I visited it for the second time .
tell + Obj. + in ...	يخبر بـ ... (لغة)	He told them in English.
help + Obj. + (to) inf.	يساعد لكي ..	He helped them to count/count .
make + Obj. + Adj.	يجعل ... (صفة)	I'll make them feel bad = (sad).
go into	يدخل	I will go into a new stage.
go for a walk	يذهب للتنشية	Bouthina went for a walk.
go on a tour	يذهب في جولة	Tourists go on a tour.
in the middle of	في وسط	It's in the middle of the city.
It is best to ..+ inf.	من الأفضل أن ..	It's best to take a taxi.



★ Words & Opposites ★

remember	يتذكر	forget	ينسى
right	صحيح	wrong	خطأ
right	جهة اليمين	left	جهة اليسار
light	خفيف الوزن	heavy	ثقيل الوزن
careful	حريص	careless	مهمل
first	أول	last	آخر

★ Definitions ★

assistant	A person who helps in a shop or in a ticket office
guidebook	Tourists read it to learn about a city's history and places.
passport	You need it when you visit another country
archaeologist	Someone who studies ancient places .

★ Listening text ★

Tarek: Look father! Those tourists are lost.

Father: Yes, we should help them. Excuse me! Do you need any help?

Woman: Oh, thank you! We are looking for the tourists information Centre.

Father: It is not far from here, but it is closed today. Can we help you?

Man: Thank you! It is our first trip to Egypt, you see. There is so much to see and do here. We don't know what to do first! We are interested in all the ancient sites and famous places. Where do you suggest we start?

Father: I suggest that you visit the museum. It is a good place to learn all about the things you will see at the ancient sites.

Woman: That is a good idea. When we are at ancient site, do you recommend a tour with a guide?

Father: That is a very good idea. The guides can tell you a lot of interesting things about a place. I also recommend you buy a guidebook. You can buy one at the tourist information centre tomorrow when it opens.

Man: Ok. We also want to go shopping. What is the best place to buy souvenirs? Do you recommend going to the bazaar?

Tarek: Yes, you should go to the bazaar in the old part of the city. There are lots of crafts to buy there.

Woman: That sounds good. Oh, one more thing. Is there a good place to eat near the museum? It is nearly lunchtime and we are really hungry.

Father: The best place to try traditional Egyptian food is the café opposite the museum... Have a good day.

Man: You too. Thank you very much!



Language notes

ملاحظات لغوية

1- recommend a tour with يوصى او يقترح جوله مع

Do you recommend a tour with a guide?

2- tell --- about يخبر او يحكى عن

Guides can tell you a lot of things about a place.

3- sound+ صفة يبدو / sound / voice صوت بشرى / صوت شىء

The film sounds good.

I can hear Basant's voice.

Meow is the cat's sound.

4- too (as well) ... أيضا (فى الاثبات) / either (فى النفى) = neither + Obj.

I like football, too.

She didn't eat fish, either.

My father didn't eat a sandwich neither me.

5- V. be + lost = get lost يضل الطريق

Those tourists are lost.

Giving Advice



Grammar



تقديم النصيحة

لا ينبغي أن / should / shouldn't ينبغي أن

1 - تستخدم (should / shouldn't) للتعبير عما ينبغي أو لا ينبغي، بغرض تقديم النصيحة، ويأتي بعدهما الفعل مصدر inf.

Tourists should wear sun cream when it is very hot.

You shouldn't watch too much TV.

2 - تأتي فى أول الجملة بمعنى (هل...؟) للاستفسار وطلب النصيحة وتأتي فعل مساعد بعد كلمة الاستفهام

Should I study English daily? - Yes, You should. - No, You shouldn't.

What should I do to be better in English? - You should study idioms and phrasal verbs.

3 - هناك تعبيرات تستخدم لتقديم النصيحة ، وتتساوى مع (should) فى المعنى، (مثل):

It's important to / من المهم أن / It's best to / من الأفضل أن / ought to / يجب أن = had better

من الضروري أن essential / من المنصوح به أن / advisable for + obj. + to / أنه مرغوب أن It's desirable to

- It is important to brush her teeth. (should) (had)

She should brush her teeth.

She had better brush her teeth

- I advise you to wash your hands. (ought) (It's essential to)

You ought to wash your hands.

It's essential to wash your hands.

- It is important not to smoke here. (shouldn't)

You shouldn't smoke here.

- Don't drive too fast in the city centre. (had)

You had better not drive too fast in the city centre

- He should obey his parents (It) (It is best to..)

It is best to / important to / advisable for him to obey his parents

4 - فى الماضى نستخدم (should have) أو (ought to have) والتصريف الثالث للفعل (P.P.) بمعنى (كان يجب/ينبغي أن):

- I blame him for not studying hard last year. (should)

He should have studied hard last year.

- She didn't do her homework yesterday. (ought to)

She ought to have done her homework yesterday.



Writing Skill

مهارة الكتابة



How to write an e-mail / a letter?



- Write an e-mail to your friend Mona about things she should and shouldn't do to be fit. Your e-mail is (Ahmed00@yahoo.com). Her email is (Mona_sparrow@hotmail.com).

To : [Mona / sparrow@hotmail.com](mailto:Mona_sparrow@hotmail.com) ايميل / اسم المرسل إليه

From : [Ahmed / Ahmed00@yahoo.com](mailto:Ahmed00@yahoo.com) ايميل / اسم الراسل

Subject : Important advices عنوان / موضوع الرسالة

Dear [Mona](mailto:Mona_sparrow@hotmail.com), (أسمك بالسؤال) اسم الراسل ,

I'm happy to write to you. How are you? I hope you are fine. There are some advices to be fit. You shouldn't eat unhealthy food. You should sleep early. You should do exercise in the morning. If I were you, I'd go to the club. You shouldn't eat too many fats. Try and don't give up. **See you soon. I'm waiting for your reply. Have a great time!**

Best regards,
Ahmed

- Write a letter to your pen friend Peter. Tell him about Egypt and its historical places. Your name is Mohamed. You live at 31 Montazh St., Zagazig.

31 Montazh St.,
Zagazig
المدينة
البلد/ الدولة
تاريخ اليوم
Egypt,
15th Jan, 2018

Dear Peter, (المرسل إليه) اسم الصديق

I'm pleased to write to you. How are you and your family? I'm going to tell you some information about Egypt and its historical places. Egypt is a great country. It has a lot of historical places.

In Giza, you can find the pyramids and the sphinx. In Cairo, you can visit a lot of museums and visit El-Azhar Park. In Luxor and Aswan, you can visit the temples and take a boat trip on the Nile River. It's the longest river in the world. In Zagazig, you can eat Egyptian traditional food. It's very delicious.

I invite you to spend a week with me in the summer holiday. **See you soon. I'm waiting for your reply. Write to me as soon as you can.**

Yours,
Mohamed



Lessons 3&4



Exercises



Lessons 3&4

1-Complete the following dialogue

Ahmed : Where did you spend your summer holiday ?

Amr : (1)

Ahmed : (2)

Amr : I went to Alexandria with my family.

Ahmed : (3)

Amr : We stayed there a fortnight.

Ahmed : Did you go fishing?

Amr : (4)

-Complete the following dialogue

Ali is talking to a tourist:

Ali : Welcome to Egypt!

Tourist : Thank you.

Ali : (1)

Tourist : I come from England.

Ali : (2)

Tourist : No, this is my second visit.

Ali : How do you like Egypt?

Tourist : (3)

Ali : Nice to meet you.

Tourist : (4)

-Complete the following dialogue

Samy meets an American tourist in the pyramids.

Samy : Welcome. (1)

Tourist : Thank you. I'm from America.

Samy : Is this your first visit to Egypt?

Tourist : (2)

Samy : Have you tried any Egyptian food?

Tourist : (3)

Samy : (4)

Tourist : Yes, It was very delicious.

Samy : Have a nice holiday.

Tourist : Thank you.

2- Write what would you say in each of the following situations:

1- Your friend is going outside. It is raining.

.....

2- Your friend forgot to do his/her English homework, the lesson starts in five minutes.

.....



3- Your younger brother / sister wants to look at the sun.

4- Your friend fell over when he/she was playing sport. Now it hurts when he /she walks.

5- There is a small fire in your washing machine. Your younger brother/ sister gets some water.

6- You advise a tourist to take lots of photos.

7- You advise your friend not to drink water from the canal.

8- You advise a tourist to try some Egyptian food.

9- You advise your younger brother not to stay in the sun for too long.

10-Your friend looks tired. Advise him.

3- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1- You buy a guidebook before you go to a city for the first time.

a- shouldn't b- wouldn't c- should d- hasn't

2- Youtake photos of people unless you ask them first.

a- should b- will c- can d- shouldn't

3- Look after your possessions. You..... leave them on a bus or train.

a- should b- will c- can d- shouldn't

4- Youalways carry your passport with you when you are traveling because people sometimes want to check it.

a- shouldn't b- wouldn't c- should d- hasn't

5-You go outside. Its raining.

a- should b- will c- must d- shouldn't

6- You should now. The bus goes in ten minutes.

a- went b- goes c- go d- going

7-When you go diving, you tell people where you are going.

a- shouldn't b- wouldn't c- should d- hasn't

8- You swim too far from the boat.

a- shouldn't b- wouldn't c- should d- hasn't

9-Many tourists use ato learn about a city's history and places to visit

a- camera b- bookshop c- guidebook d- ticket

10-The old part of Hurgada is a good place to buy

a- seas b- hotels c- souvenirs d- houses



11- You need when you visit another country.

a- passport b -tourist c- bazaar d- brochure

12- After a long and tiring work, we should take a to have our meal.

a- break b-timetable c- camera d-overwork

13- You must carry your When you travel abroad.

a-book b- passport c-pen d- sunglasses

14-I want to buy a good dictionary. Do you have any?

a-recommendations b- condensation c-evaporation d- operations

15- A Is a small magazine that has pictures and information on a product or a company.

a- dairy b -product c- mail d- brochure

16- Don't I'll take you to the police station.

a- sorry b -worry c- carry d- marry

17- An is a person who helps in a shop or in a ticket office

a- assistant b - archaeologist c- owner d- actor

18- If you do not know how to find a building, you can ask for.....

a- discoveries b- detectives c-directions d-diagrams

19-You need a.....when you visit another country.

a- passport b- tourist c- bazaar d-brochure

20-The restaurant that he told us about was a very good.... . We loved it!

a- recipe b- recommendation c- souvenir d- advice

4-Read and correct the underlined words:

1- You should stay under the water for too long. (.....)

2-You shouldn't look out for dangerous sharks. (.....)

3-You shouldn't going diving if the weather is bad. (.....)

4- I always have my lunch in a famous bank. (.....)

5- we went to the post office to buy a ticket. (.....)

5- Rewrite the following using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:

1- I advise you to eat few sweets. (shouldn't)

2- You should help the poor woman. (should)

3- I advise you to practise exercises. (should)

4-You should eat healthy food. (advisable)



Unit (1)



Test (1)



Unit (1)

① Supply the following dialogue between a reporter and a tourist:

Reporter : (1)

Tourist : I'm fine, thank you.

Reporter : (2)

Tourist : Yes, of course.

Reporter : Where do you come from?

Tourist : (3)

Reporter : Britain ! (4)

Tourist : Yes , I visited Aswan last week .

② What do you say in the following situations

1- Your friend asks you to recommend him a good story to read.

2- Your brother suggesting watching the football match but you refuse.

3- You give your friend advice to keep fit.

③ Read the following passage and answer the questions:

Tourists visit Egypt from all over the world to enjoy our ancient monuments and to enjoy our fine weather. Tourists can visit the Egyptian Museum in Cairo and see its treasures.

They can go to the citadel and Cairo Tower. They also go to Giza to see the pyramids and the sphinx. They go to Aswan to see the High Dam and they visit Luxor to enjoy its wonderful historic places such as the Valley of the Kings. Egypt also enjoys the most fantastic resorts in Alexandria and in Sharm El-Shiekh so tourists visit them regularly.

A) Answer the following questions:

1- What is the main idea of the passage?

2- Why do tourists go to Luxor ?

3- What can tourists see inside the Egyptian Museum ?

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

4- Tourists enjoy visiting

a- Luxor b- Cairo c- Giza d- all of these cities

5- Sharm and Alexandria are famous for their

a- monuments b- resorts c- citadel d- valleys



The Reader : Black Beauty

4 (a) Read and match:

A	B
1- Farmer Grey	a) The horse who tells the story.
2- Black Beauty	b) A short , fat horse.
3- Merrylegs	c) A horse who had a difficult past.
4- Ginger	d) A horse who forgot his mother's advice
	e) Black Beauty's first owner,

(b) Answer the following questions

1- Describe Black Beauty ?

.....

2- What did Black Beauty 's mother advise him to do ?

.....

3-What was Birtwick Park like?

.....

4-What did the hoses think of Birtwick Park?

.....

5-How do we know that Black Beauty had good owners?

.....

5 Choose the correct answer from a,b,c or d

1- You smoke near any petrol station.

a- should b- shouldn't c- have d- can

2- I a party next week. Everything is arranged.

a- will give b- am giving c- gave d- has given

3- Let's go a walk.

a- in b- on c- at d- for

4- Tourists like going to the to buy souvenirs.

a- temples b- bazaar c- pyramids d- sphinx

5-You can't travel abroad without having your

a- bag b- book c- passport d- shirt

6-If you visit Hurghada , you can stay in the hostel

a- man b- woman c- girl d- youth

6 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) in brackets .

1-It is essential for him not to waste his time. (He)

.....

2- I think you should visit the museum. (recommend)

.....

3- I blame her for not tidying her room yesterday. (should)

.....



7 Write a paragraph of (7) sentences about :

Why is Egypt a good place for tourists to visit?

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Unit (1)



Test (2)



Unit (1)

1 Supply the following dialogue

Samy meets an American tourist in the pyramids.

Samy : Welcome. (1)

Tourist : Thank you. I'm from America.

Samy : Is this your first visit to Egypt?

Tourist : (2)

Samy : Have you tried any Egyptian food?

Tourist : (3)

Samy : (4)

Tourist : Yes, It was very delicious.

2 What do you say in the following situations

1 – You recommend visiting the museum.

.....

2 – You offer to help an old woman carry a heavy bag.

.....

3 – You advise your brother not to smoke.

.....

3 Read the following passage and answer the questions:

Once a train stopped at a small station and a woman opened the window. There was a boy outside and the woman said to him, I don't want to get out of the train as I am old and I can't walk fast. Please, run to the station Cafeteria and get me an ice cream and get one for yourself, too. Here is one pound."

The boy came back before the train moved again. He was eating an ice cream. He ran to the woman's window, gave her fifty piastres and said, "I am awfully sorry madam, there was only one ice cream in the Cafeteria. Here's the one and fifty piastres."



A) Answer the following questions :

1- Where did the train stop ?

.....
.....

2- What did the woman ask the boy to do?

.....
.....

3- Why couldn't the woman go to the Cafeteria?

.....
.....

B) Choose the correct answer from a,b, c or d :

4- the boy came back a few seconds

a - when the train moved

b - before the train moved

c - after the train moved

d - the moment the train moved)

5- The boy bought

a - one ice cream

b - two ice creams

c - no ice cream

d - a cup of tea)

The Reader : Black Beauty

4 (a) Read and match:

(A)	(B)
1 – Anna Sewell was born	a - Farmer Grey
2 – Anna had an accident which	b - Gordon
3 – The narrator was	c - Black Beauty
4 – The first owner was	d - damaged her legs
	e - In England

B – Answer the following questions

1 – Who is the author of the story?

.....
.....

2 – Who is the narrator of the story?

.....
.....

3 – Who was the first owner of Black Beauty?

.....
.....

4 – Who was the youngest horse ?

.....
.....

5 - Who were Black Beauty's new friends?

.....
.....



5 Choose the correct answer from a,b,c or d

1- Our by plane was very long.

- a - voyage b. picnic c. cruise d. flight

2- Basant suggested that Ali a holiday.

- a. take b. takes c. taking d - took

3- I am a quiz about football.

- a. doing b. do c. does d. did

4- The of Egypt is the pound.

- a. country b. currency c. flag d. song

5- is a sport you can do on the water.

- a. judo b. karate c. windsurfing d. football

6- You always carry your passport in other countries.

- a. should b. shouldn't c. mustn't d. having

6 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) in brackets .

1 – He didn't arrive early. (shouldn't)

.....

2 – You should work to a plan. (If I were you---)

.....

3 – Hotels are more expensive than youth hostel. (more)

.....

7 Write an e-mail of (7) sentences about :

- Write an e-mail to your friend Tom about your last trip. Your name is Ahmed.

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



Unit (2)

Books and Reading

Lessons 1&2

★ Vocabulary ★

historical	تاريخية / تاريخي
detective	محقق / بوليسى
interest in	اهتمام بـ
school work	واجبات مدرسية
school time	وقت الدراسة
page	صفحة
amount of +	كمية من .. غير معدود
numbers of +	عدد من .. معدود
title	عنوان
a review	مقال نقدي - مراجعة
popular	شائع - محبوب - مشهور
What kind	ما نوع ..؟
facts about	وقائع - حقائق عن
world	عالم
rain	مطر
during	أثناء
spider	عنكبوت
driest	الأجف
second	ثانية
suddenly	فجأة
someone +	شخص ما فعل مفرد
something	شيء ما
finally	أخيراً
countable	معدود
uncountable	غير معدود
road	طريق
street	شارع
way	طريق - طريقة
recipe	وصفة (للطعام)

travelling	السفر
The Antarctic	القارة القطبية الجنوبية
useful	مفيد
language	لغة
pharaohs	فراعنة
newspaper	جريدة
exciting	مثير
writer	كاتب
desert	صحراء
litre	لتر
noisy	صاخب - مزعج
adventure	مغامرة
character	شخصية (بفيلم / مسرحية)
person	شخص
summary	ملخص - موجز
favourite	مفضل
afraid	خائف
feel frightened	يشعر بالرعب
too long	طويل للغاية
Korean	كوري
soil	تربة
play	مسرحية / يلعب
novel	رواية
lots of	كثير من ..
a lot of	كثير من
library	مكتبة
holiday	أجازة
mysteries	ألغاز - غموض
deep	عميق



★ Conjugation of verbs ★

Present	Meaning	Past	P.P
solve	يحل	solved	solved
recommend	يوصي / يركى	recommended	recommended
wait for	ينتظر لـ	waited for	waited for
spend	يقضي	spent	spent
carry	يحمل	carried	carried
realise	يدرك	realised	realised
weigh	يزن	weighed	weighed
tremble	يرتجف - يرتعش	trembled	trembled
shake	يرج - يهتز - يرتعش	shook	shaken
understand	يفهم	understood	understood
return	يعود	returned	returned
use	يستخدم	used	used
read	يقرأ	read	read
try to	يحاول أن ..	tried to	tried to
feel	يشعر	felt	felt
think	يفكر - يعتقد	thought	thought
blow	يهب	blew	blown
know	يعرف	knew	known
meet	يقابل	Met	met
choose	يختار	chose	chosen
copy	ينسخ	copied	copied

★ Prepositions ★

interest in	اهتمام بـ ...	facts about	حقائق عن
review of	مراجعة - تحليل - نقد لـ	like to + inf.	يحب أن ...
try to + inf.	يحاول أن ..	need to + inf.	يريد - يحتاج أن
want to + inf.	يريد أن	important for	مهم لـ ..
lots of	كثير من	look after	يعتني بـ
a lot of	كثير من	look up	يبحث عن كلمة بـ قاموس
tremble with	يرتجف / يهتز من ..	V. be + going to	سوف



★ Kinds of stories ★

historical stories القصص التاريخية	- It is a story in which deals with real events in history. - "Brave Heart" is one of the best historical stories.
adventure stories قصص المغامرة	- It is a story that tells us about an adventure. - "The Lost World" is a fantastic adventure story.
detective stories قصص بوليسية	- It is a story in which a detective tries to solve a crime. - "Sherlock Holmes" is an interesting detective story.
mystery stories قصص الغموض	- It has strange things that aren't explained until the end. - "The secret of The Old Clock" is a mystery story.

★ Words & Opposites ★

light	خفيف	heavy	ثقيل
wet	مبلل - مبتل	dry	جاف
quiet - calm	هادئ	nervous	عصبي - متوتر
unsafe - dangerous	خطير - غير آمن	safe	آمن
kind	عطوف - طيب القلب	unkind	قاسي
weak	ضعيف	strong	قوي
east	الشرق	west	الغرب

★ Definitions ★

review	: Writing which gives your opinion about a book or film.
summary	: Writing that gives the main information about Something.
novel	: It's a long story that's written.
title	: The name given to a book, a play, etc.
tour guide	: is someone who shows tourists around places.
Tremble	: Shake a little when you are afraid.
Historical	: Connected with history (the past).
Detective	: Someone who helps the police to discover a criminal.
Adventure	: Containing exciting or dangerous events.
Character	: A person in a book or a film.



★ Reading ★

Tarek : I have some time before my next lesson. Let's choose a book to read.

Omar : There are lots of historical stories here, but there are few detective stories.

Tarek: That is because detective stories are more popular, aren't they? People like trying to solve the problems before the detective. People have less interest in historical stories.

Omar : Detective stories are too long. I have little time to read this year because I have more schoolwork. So I want a book with fewer pages than a detective story.

Tarek : This book has the fewest number of pages and will take you the least amount of time to read.

Omar : Tarek , that book is about travelling, isn't it?

Tarek : True! This is good. Its title is Ten Facts about the World.

Omar : I read a review of that book. It said it was very good. I will read that!

Language notes

ملاحظات لغوية

1 – Let's + inf. فعل مصدر = How about + v + ing.?

☞ Let's choose a book to read.

☞ How about choosing a book to read?

2 – history التاريخ / historian مؤرخ / historic تاريخى / historical التاريخ يحكى عن التاريخ

☞ My favourite subject is history.

☞ He writes about history, he is a historian.

☞ The Valley of the Kings is a historic place.

☞ There are a lot of historical stories.

3 – like + v + ing. يحب / would ('d) like to + inf. فعل مصدر

☞ I like watching TV.

☞ I would like to watch TV.

4 – take + وقت + to + inf. مصدر = spend + وقت + V+ ing. (يستغرق وقت)

☞ I will take 2 hours to do homework.

☞ I will spend 2 hours doing homework.

5 – title عنوان بجميدة headline / عنوان سكن address / عنوان كتاب او لقب شخص

☞ The title of the book is Black Beauty.

☞ My address is 30 Orabi Street, Cairo.

☞ "El-Sisi ruined Egypt" was the headline of New York Times newspaper.

6 – a review مقالة نقدية عن / a view منظر طبيعى

☞ I have read a review of that book. ☞ My new flat has a view.

7- V. have + interest in لديه اهتمام بـ / V. to be + interested in مهتم بـ

* People have less interest in historical stories.

* People are less interested in historical stories



Language Functions

الوظائف اللغوية

- Ask for feelings

السؤال عن المشاعر والأحاسيس

- ✂ How do you feel when (you are in a dark place)? [مضارع]
- ✂ How do you feel when (you win a prize)? [مضارع]
- ✂ How do you feel about(the story/ the trip) now? [مضارع]
- ✂ Did the (story) make you feel .. (frightened - quiet happy)? [ماضي]
- ✂ How did you feel when(you read Robinson Crusoe)? [ماضي]

- Express feelings

التعبير عن المشاعر

- ✂ I feel ... (frightened – quite happy) [مضارع]
- ✂ I don't feel.....(sad / hungry / thirsty ... , etc) [مضارع]
- ✂ It made me feel.....(excited / happy / proud ... , etc). [ماضي]
- ✂ I felt (nervous / disappointed / embarrassed .. , etc) [ماضي]

Example: مثال

Adel : How **do** you **feel** when you read the story?

Baher : I **feel** quite happy.

Adel : How **did** you **feel** when you won a prize?

Baher : I **felt** proud.



Question tag

Remember

السؤال المذيّل

- 1- يأتي السؤال المذيّل في نهاية (جملة خبرية **statement**)، للتأكد من صحة المعلومة، بمعنى (أليس كذلك؟)
- 2- يأتي السؤال المذيّل عكس الجملة من ناحية الإثبات والنفي .. (المثبت منفي والمنفي مثبت).
- 3- لابد أن يأتي النفي مختصر بـ (**n't**) وليس (**not**) ، ويتكون من : (? ضمير فاعل + فعل مساعد , ...)
- 4- الأفعال المساعدة في اللغة الإنجليزية (مثل) :

[am/is/are/was/were/will/would/should/have/has/had/can/could/do/does/did., etc]

? ضمير الفاعل + فعل مساعد منفي جملة مثبتة

? ضمير الفاعل + فعل مساعد منفي جملة مثبتة

- This is your pencil, **isn't it**?
- He can't drive a car, **can he**?
- You should hurry, **shouldn't you**?
- You aren't Egyptian, **are you**?

Notes

- عند عدم وجود فعل مساعد في الجملة، نستخدم (V. do) ويأتي السؤال المذيّل منفي:

- Mona wrote a novel, **didn't she**?
- Ahmed plays well, **doesn't he**?
- عندما تأتي الأفعال (have, has, had) كأفعال أساسية في الجملة، وليست مساعدة، نستخدم (V.do):
- They have a car, **don't they**?
- He had an accident, **did he**?
- She had read the story, **hadn't she**?
- He has a novel, **doesn't he**?
- عند الإجابة : تكون الإجابة مثبتة (إذا كانت الجملة مثبتة) ، وتكون الإجابة نفي (إذا كانت الجملة نفي) :
- He **can't** help you, can he? - **No**, he **can't**.
- He **will** visit Italy, won't he? - **Yes**, he **will**.



1-Complete the following dialogue

Soha tells Samy about her favourite kind of stories

Samy : (1) , Soha?

Soha : I'm reading a story.

Samy : A story ! What kind of story are you reading?

Soha : (2)

Samy : It's my first time I know you like reading about crime الجريمة.

Soha : No, it's my favourite.

Samy : Who is your favourite writer?

Soha : (3)

Samy : (4) ?

Soha : The title is "The secret".

2- Write what would you say in each of the following situations:

1- Your friend has finished a book. The end of the book made you feel sad. You want to know if your friend thinks the same.

.....

2- You want to know your friend's feeling when he read a ghost story.

.....

3- Your younger brother is late. You are worried.

.....

4- Your friend asks about your feeling towards yesterday's match.

.....

5- Your friend asks you : "How do you feel about the School Magazine?"

.....

6- You are happy when you watch a comic film. Express your feeling.

.....

7- You have read a very exciting story. Express your feeling.

.....

8-You want to advise your younger sister to get up early.

.....

9- You advise him not to walk too close to the road.

.....

10- You suggest going to the library.

.....



3- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1- This is a story about the pharaohs in ancient Egypt.

- a- detective b- mystery c- historical d- funny

2- A helps the police in their work.

- a- teacher b- detective c- mechanic d- doctor

3- The of the book you are using is 'New Light'.

- a- address b- headlines c- symbols d- title

4- I think football is more than karate.

- a- terrible b- popular c- dangerous d- horrible

5- He can't go out because he has more school

- a- building b- playground c- work d- job

6- If someone is trembling, he/she is very hard.

- a- shaking b- drinking c- sleeping d- studying

7- If a person feels, he/she is not strong.

- a- weak b- weak c- strong d- fat

8- He had no food and little water in the

- a- dessert b- desert c- wall d- secret

9- People have less in historical stories.

- a- uninterested b- interesting c- interested d- interest

10- This book will take you the least of time to read.

- a- amount b- mountain c- main d- money

11- We saw a lot of treasures at the

- a- bank b- desert c- museum d- sky

12- I want to see that film because the in the newspaper says that it is very exciting.

- a- review b- queue c- statue d- flu

13- Most things need water to live.

- a- dead b- living c- dying d- rocky

14- To is to write the main information about Something.

- a- review b- travel c- score d- summary

15- The main in the story is The Horse.

- a. title b. theme c. character d. end

16- Let's the new book.

- a. buying b. buys c. bought d. buy

17- He spent 3 hours for the exam.

- a. revise b. revising c. to revise d. revised

19- The camel is called the ship of the

- a. desert b. dessert c. spaceship d. river

20- The match was between Ahly and Zamalek.

- a. finally b. final c. funny d. find



- 1- His mother made him cleaning his room. [.....]
- 2- The teacher made us studied very hard. [.....]
- 3- Her story made me really happiness. [.....]
- 4- He feels quiet excited. [.....]
- 5- A detective story is a story which tells us about history. [.....]
- 6- My legs were trembling on fear. [.....]
- 7- The sun goes down at 5 o'clock in the morning. [.....]
- 8-The story is history. It is about the pharaohs of ancient Egypt. [.....]

1- He is less interested in cooking. (interest)

2- He was happy when he read the story. (made)

3- He will travel to France next week. (going to)

4- I advise you to visit Aswan, (should)

Your favourite Egyptian writer



Unit (2)

Books and Reading

Lessons 3&4

★ Vocabulary ★

Living things	الاشياء الحية	help	يساعد
wind	رياح	helper	الشخص المساعد
blow	يهب	helpful	مفيد-مساعد
leaf -leaves	أوراق شجر	helpfully	بشكل مساعد
food	طعام	helpless	عاجز
desert	صحراء	helplessly	عاجزاً
dessert	طبق حلوى	deepest	أعمق
because	لأن	pharaohs	فراعنة
another day	يوم آخر	school trip	رحلة مدرسية
somewhere	مكان آخر	weigh	يزن
still	ما زال	weight	وزن
how far	ما بعد/مسافة؟	trouble	مشكلة
nearest road	أقرب طريق	expert	خبير
night	الليل	enjoyable	ممتع
describe	يصف	excited	مثار
description	وصف	frightened	مرعوب
root	جزر	quite	إلى حد ما
towards	تجاه	happy	سعيد
teeth	أسنان	adventure	مغامرة
noisy	مزعج / صاخب	mystery	غموض
tour guide	مرشد سياحي	other	آخر
care	حرص	suddenly	مفاجأة
carer	المعتن	short story	قصة قصيرة
Careful	حريص	driving test	اختبار القيادة
carefully	بحرص	point to	يشير إلى
careless	مهمل	character	شخصية
carelessly	بإهمال	unless	إذا لم
opinion	رأي	might	ربما
nervous	عصبي	play	مسرحية
island	جزيرة	sailor	بحار



★ Conjugation of verbs ★

Present	Meaning	Past	P.P
die	تموت	died	died
recognise	يتعرف على	recognised	recognised
need	يحتاج	needed	needed
blow	يهب - ينفخ	blew	blown
include	يتضمن	included	included
contain	يحتوى على	contained	contained
describe	يصف	described	described
say	يقول	said	said
sink	يغوص	sank	sunk
own	يمتلك	owned	owned
weigh	يزن	weighed	weighed
hear	يسمع	heard	heard
sell	يبيع	sold	sold
begin	يبدأ	began	begun
pass	يجتاز - ينجح	passed	passed
become	يصبح	became	become
remember	يتذكر	remembered	remembered
encourage	يشجع	encouraged	encouraged
last	يستمر - يدوم	lasted	lasted

★ Prepositions ★

for example	على سبيل المثال	talk about	يتكلم عن
live for	يعيش لمدة	in fact	في الواقع
make friends with	يكون صداقات مع ..	the least number of	أقل عدد من
opinion about	رأي عن ..	in the desert	في الصحراء
write down	يسجل - يدون	a little interest in	أهتمام قليل لـ
teach + Obj. + to + inf	يعلم ... أن	on the road	على الطريق
grow up	يكبر - ينمو	feel about	شعورك عن
return from	يعود من	amount of	مقدار / كمية من
stay ,, for	يبقى لمدة ...	need to + inf	يحتاج أن / يريد



★ Words & Opposites ★

go down	يغيب	go up	تشرق / ترتفع
quickly	بسرعة	slowly	ببطء
cold	بارد	hot - warm	دافئ
unusual	غير عادي	usual	عادي
short	قصير	long	طويل
important	مهم	unimportant	غير هام
shy	خجول	talkative	ثرثاء
unfortunately	لسوء الحظ	fortunately	لحسن الحظ
modern - new	حديث - جديد	ancient - old	أزلي - قديم
before	قبل	after	بعد

★ Definitions ★

review	: writing which gives your opinion about a book or film
summary	: writing that gives the main information about Something
novel	: a long story that's written
title	: the name given to a book. Play, etc
tour guide	: is someone who shows tourists around places
expert	: is someone who has very special skill

★ A Short story ★

The trees are the first living things that Hassan has seen in five days. The Wind is blowing and the leaves on the trees are trembling, like him. He is tired and weak.

A few hours before he arrived here, Hassan thought he was going to die. There was no food in the desert and he knew that the little water he had would not last another day. Now he knows that he will find water, because if there are trees, there must be water somewhere. But he still doesn't know where he is. How far is it to the nearest road, where he might find help?

The sun is going down quickly and he knows it will be cold for the next eight hours. How can he stay warm for another night in the desert?

Suddenly, he sees something. Someone is carrying a light towards him. He realizes that it is a man. Finally, help has arrived. He is safe.

How do you feel about the story?



★ Listening Text ★

Nadia : Did you like the end of the story?

Salma : I am not sure I understand it. Who is the man with the light? And why does it say that the leaves are trembling? People usually tremble when they feel excited or frightened, not leaves.

Nadia : Hassan is trembling because he is tired and weak. He has been in the desert for five days. I don't think the writer is saying that the leaves feel frightened when the wind comes, but they are moving in the same way as Hassan because he is so tired.

Salma : How did you feel when Hassan finally saw the trees?

Nadia : It made me feel excited! You know that he will find some water because there are trees there, and they need water. We know that he won't die.

Salma : I think it is clever because we think that he will be alone in the desert for another night, but then he sees the light.

Nadia : Why do you think there is a man with a light?

Salma : I think that it is his friend Ahmed . Ahmed knew that Hassan was going in the desert and we know that Ahmed knows the desert very well. So Hassan is safe now.

Nadia : Yes, I think you are right.

Salma : How do you feel about the story now?

Nadia : I feel quite happy! I like adventure stories like this.

Language notes

ملاحظات لغوية

1 – the last / الأخير / يستمر – يدوم

☞ The **last** time he visited Aswan was in 2010.

☞ His water won't **last** for long.

2 – light / كشف / مصباح – كشف / ضوء – خفيف

☞ It is not heavy, it is **light**. ☞ He is carrying **a light**.

3 – finally / فى النهاية / نهائى / final

☞ **Finally**, help has arrived. ☞ The **final** match will be tomorrow.

4 – V. (have) + gone to / ذهب وما زال هناك / been to / عاد / كان

☞ She has **gone to** the market. مازالت ☞ She has **been to** the market. عادت

5 – alone / بمفرده * lonely / يشعر بالوحدة

☞ He was **alone** in the desert.

☞ He feels **lonely** although he has a big family.

6 – very + Adj. / صفة / very + Adverb / حال

☞ He is very **good**. ☞ He plays very **well**.

7 – quite / الى حد ما / quiet / هادئ / quit / هروب

☞ It is **quite** hot today. ☞ The place is **quiet** not noisy..



Grammar

Comparatives & Superlatives

المقارنة والتفضيل

a lot of كثير من
many كثير من
few قليل من

- تأتي بعدهم أسم معدود (Countable noun) - يجمع بإضافة (s) الجمع:
- هناك أسماء لا تنتهي بـ (s) ولكنها جمع، ويأتي بعدها فعل جمع، مثل:

people - police - women - men - youth - the poor - the rich
jeans - shoes - shirts : مثل: هناك كلمات تتكون من جزئين (فردتين) ، وتعد جمع، مثل:

- ✂ There are a lot of historical stories in this library. (=lots of)
- ✂ There are few detective stories. ✂ Few students read novels.
- ✂ Few people have walked on the moon. ✂ I have got few books.
- ✂ He bought many jeans but only a few shirts.

a lot of كثير من
much كثير من
little قليل من

- يأتي بعدهم أسم غير معدود uncountable noun - لا يجمع لا يعد (كمية) :
- من أشهر الكلمات غير المعدودة في الاختبارات : (oil-water-women-coffee-time-
bread-money-news-information-equipment-maths-tea-sugar-meat
rain-air-furniture-jewelry-petrol-..etc)

- ✂ There is little water in the lake as it was very dry this year.
- ✂ I drank much tea before I went out. ✂ There is little time to catch the bus.
- ✂ We have got much sugar but there is only a little oil.
- ✂ He has little time to read this year because he has to work in the summer.

Notes

- تستخدم (only) مع (a few / a little) :

- ✂ She has received only a little news. ✂ I have seen only a few films.
- تأتي كلاً من (a little / a few) بمعنى (قليل يكفي) وتأتي (little / few) بمعنى (قليل لا يكفي):
- ✂ We have little rice. ✂ He has few T-shirts. (لا يكفي)
- ✂ There is a little time to catch the bus. ✂ He has a few jeans. (يكفي)

Comparison

الدرجة الأولى

few
little
a lot / many / much

قليل (للعدد)
قليل (للكمية)
كثير

الدرجة الثانية

fewer than
less than
more than

الدرجة الثالثة

الأقل
الأقل
الأكثر
the fewest
the least
the most

أمثلة على الدرجة الثانية

- ✂ I want a book with fewer pages than a detective story.
- ✂ I have got fewer books than my friend.
- ✂ My brother has got less money than me.
- ✂ I've less interest in funny stories than historical stories.
- ✂ There were fewer tourists than usual on the beach.

أمثلة على الدرجة الثالثة

- ✂ It has the fewest number of pages.
- ✂ I will take the least amount of time.
- ✂ She drank the least juice.
- ✂ Water is the least expensive material.
- ✂ It's the most expensive mobiles.

تجدها بهذا الشكل في الامتحان

- ✂ My sister has more clothes than me. (I/ fewer) ✂ I have fewer clothes than my sister.
- ✂ She bought more meat than him. (He/less) ✂ He bought less meat than her.
- ✂ May has the least rain of all months. (less/any) ✂ May has less rain than any month.
- ✂ My car uses less petrol than the old car. (more) ✂ The old car uses more petrol than my car.



Lessons 3&4



Exercises

Lessons 3&4

1-Complete the following dialogue

Seif has just watched a film at Yassin's house .

Seif : That was a very good film.

Yassin : Yes, it was. (1)

Seif : I was frightened when Detective Zaki was in the desert. Why did he go there?

Yassin : (2)

Seif : Now I understand. Do you recommend watching his other detective films?

Yassin : (3)

Seif : (4)

Yassin : It will be on next week.

2 - Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1- This book has pages than that book.

a- little b- less c- fewer d- least

2-People often drink water in hot weather than when it is cold.

a- less b- least c- more d- most

3-students in our school have visited England.

a- Few b- Little c- Less d- The least

4- There are than 20 people on the bus today.

a- little b- less c- fewer d- least

5- The number of tourists visits the museum early in the morning.

a- least b- fewer c- less d- little

6- Students often have sleep during school time than the holidays.

a- little b- less c- fewer d- least

7- The Antarctic is the place in the world that has the rain.

a- fewest b- less c- fewer d- least

8- people think that English is not a useful language.

a- Few b- Little c- Less d- The least

9- When is the time of the year in Egypt?

a- dry b- drier c- driest d- dried

10- The old library has..... books than the modern library.

a- fewer b- less c- few d- little

11- We all do..... work when we feel tired.

a- fewer b- less c- few d- fewest



12- This bottle has..... orange juice in it.

- a- the fewest b-fewer c- few d- the least

13- Do you know the animal with the.....teeth.

- a- little b- less c- fewest d- least

14 -This car uses petrol than the old car, so it is not so expensive.

- a- little b- less c- fewer d- least

15- There's time to catch the bus. Walk quickly!

- a- few b- little c- fewer d- least

16- ... people have walked on the moon. Charles Duke was the youngest.

- a-Little b- Less c- Few d- Fewest

17- May is the driest month in Cairo. It has the ... rain of all the months.

- a- fewest b- less c- fewer d- least

18- There were ... tourists than usual on the beach because it was windy.

- a- few b- little c- fewer d- least

19- There were eggs in it, so we were very with them.

- a- careless b- care c- carer d- careful

20 -Ahmed drove very.....after he passed his driving test.

- a- careful b- careless c- carer d- care

21- I liked the..... of how he finds food and a place to live.

- a- described b- description c- describable d- describe

22- ... is the text that gives the important information about something.

- a- film b- library c- summary d- river

23- To shake a little when you are afraid, worried or excited means to ...

- a- tremble b- last c- continue d- make

24- The person in a book, a play or a film is called

- a- thief b- character c- guide d- expert

25- means something unusual, exciting and maybe dangerous.

- a- Adventure b- fun c- review d- broche

26- Mazin's mother is a She helps people who are very old.

- a- care b- careful c- careless d- carer

3- Rewrite the following using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:

1-March has more days than February. (fewer)

2-The blue bottle has more water than the green bottle. (less)

3-Not many people like historical novels. (few)



4-I'd like to read this detective story, but I don't have much time. (**little**)

5-Rodayna has more books in her bag than Malak. (**fewer**)

6-I don't have as much interest in adventure stories as I do in mysteries. (**less**)

7-Manal always helps people. (**helpful**)

8- Heba didn't drink much coffee. (**little**)

9- I don't eat much meat. (**little**)

10-The earth has more air than other planets. (**less**)

4-Read and correct the underlined words:

1- There are least English cars than Korean cars in Egypt. [.....]

2-1.6 litres is the fewest amount of water that women should drink daily. [.....]

3- There are very less people who live in the west of Egypt. [.....]

4- The tour guide said that ten is the less number of tourists she can take on the boat trip. [.....]

5- The hotel was noisy, so they had few sleep last night. [.....]

6- Very little people have travelled to the deepest pans of the sea. [.....]

7- Sherlock Holmes was a very enjoyed story. [.....]

8- The chief expert of the story is wonderful. [.....]

5 - Write a paragraph of Seven (7) sentences about

"The importance of Reading"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



Unit (2)



Test (1)



Unit (2)

1 Supply the following dialogue:

Teacher : (1)

Student : I come here twice a week?

Teacher : What kind of books are you interested in?

Student : (2)

Teacher : (3)

Student : Because I like to be a detective when I grow up.

Teacher : (3)

Student : My favourite character is Holmes.

2 What do you say in the following situations

1- You are going to do a difficult exam.

2- You make a lot of mistakes.

3- You ask your friend about his feelings when he saw the lion.

3 Read the following passage and answer the questions:

Reading is a useful hobby which benefits everyone who reads .The clever students are those who try to read more in their spare time instead of wasting their time watching TV or using the internet uselessly.

Reading gives the reader an idea about his world and provides him with useful culture. Reading makes you travel to different places while you are at your own home and it also helps you widen your mind and supplies you with a lot of knowledge.

A) Answer the following questions:

1- Suggest a suitable title for the passage?

2- Who are the clever students?

3- How can students waste your time?

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

Spare time means time.

a- good

b- bad

c- busy

d- free

Reading provides the readers with culture and

a- money

b- food

c- knowledge

d- home



The Reader : Black Beauty

4 (a) Read and match:

A	B
1-Black Beauty	a) said "Never bite or kick even if you are playing".
2-Black Beauty's mother	b) is the horse that had one white foot.
3-Squire Gordon	c) is a horse that had a short, fat legs.
4-Squire Gordon's wife	d) named the horse " Black Beauty"
	e) bought Black Beauty from Farmer Grey.

(b) Answer the following questions

1- Who helped Black Beauty to learn to pull a carriage?

2- Why did Ginger sometimes bite or kick people?

3- Why did Squire Gordon's children stop visiting Merrylegs?

4- Do you think that Merrylegs was right to behave badly with the children? Why ? Why not?

5-Why was Squire Gordon angry with a man who worked for him?

5 Choose the correct answer from a,b,c or d

1- students in our school have visited England.

a- Few b- Little c- Less d- Least

2- Sherlock Holmes was a clever..... about our visit.

a- police b- thief c- detective d- soldier

3-I read a good about your story in the newspaper.

a- revision b- vision c- review d- view

4- We will have oil in the future than today.

a- few b- little c- fewer d- less

5- My mother is a as she always helps old people.

a- care b- careful c- carer d- carefully

6- Salt is the expensive material

a- little b- few c- fewer d- least

6 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) in brackets .

1- March has more days than February (fewer)

2- Aswan is hotter than Cairo (as)

3- Amal has got more sugar than Dalia . (Dalia has)



7 Write a paragraph of (7) sentences about :

" Short story you had read before "

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Unit (2)



Test (2)



Unit (2)

1 Supply the following dialogue

Eman is going to the library.

Tamer : Where are you going?

Eman : (1)

Tamer : (2) ?

Eman : I prefer historical books.

Tamer : (3) ?

Eman : I go there three times a week.

Tamer : What's your favourite writer?

Eman : (4)

2 What do you say in the following situations

1 – How did you feel when you read the story?

.....

2 – What is your opinion of the film?

.....

3 –You suggest going to the library.

.....

3 Read the following passage and answer the questions:

Samira is a clever girl. She is going to be a nurse. She is having classes at a nursing school near her home. She has to study hard. She is already helpful to other nurses because she can feed and wash a sick child. She can also change its clothes. One day, her little brother Ahmed, was sick. He had a bad cold and couldn't go to school.

Samira advised him to stay at home or other children would catch his cold. She gave him a glass of orange juice and opened the window wide to let fresh air in. Her mother smiled. "A sick child in the family is good practice for a nurse, isn't it Samira?" she said."



A) Answer the following questions :

1 - What is Samira going to be?

2 - How is Samira already helpful to other nurses?

3 - Why couldn't Ahmed go to school?

B) Choose the correct answer from a,b, c or d :

4 - Samira advised Ahmed to

a- go to school

c- stay at home

b - go to the park.

d - eat ice cream.

5 - Samira opened the window to

a- let fresh air in

c- clean the room

b- help Ahmed to sleep.

d- catch cold.

The Reader : Black Beauty

4 (a) Read and match:

(A)	(B)
1 - The new owner was	a - Merrylegs and Ginger
2 - Gordon lived in	b - John Manly
3 - Gordon's helper was	c - Farmer Grey
4 - Black Beauty became friends with	d - Birtwick Park
	e - Squire Gordon

B - Answer the following questions

1 - When would Ginger be as good as Black Beauty?

2 - What bad thing did Merrylegs do one day?

3 - Why did Merrylegs throw the children on the ground?

4 - Why was Merrylegs angry with older children?

5 - Why didn't Merrylegs kick the children?



5 Choose the correct answer from a,b,c or d

1- I did my homework No one helped me.

- a. lonely b. alone c. loneliness d. me self

2- This is a difficult problem I can't it.

- a. see b. solve d. read d. eat

3- How information do you have?

- a. many b. few c. fewer d. much

4- We don't know the reason for the accident, it is a

- a. secret b. mystery c. clear d. clean to

5- He has been the club, he is there now.

- a. to b. in c. by d. from

4. A is a long story that is written.

- a . novel b. tale c. poem d. poet

6 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) in brackets .

1- Rodayna has fewer book than Bouthina. (more)

.....

2 – I don't have as much interest in films as I do in matches. (less)

.....

3 – No boy is taller than Ali. (tallest)

.....

7 Write an e-mail of (7) sentences about :

- Write an e-mail to your friend Tom about your favourite hobby. Your name is Ali.
Your e-mail is Ali_12@yahoo.com. Your friend e-mail is Tom_green@hotmail.com

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



Unit (3)

Festivals & Special Days

Lessons 1&2

★ Vocabulary ★

festivals	احتفالات	activities	أنشطة
special	خاص	Bosnia	البوسنة
spring	الربيع	pan	طاسة - مقلاة
summer	الصيف	month-long	لمدة شهر
winter	الشتاء	freezer	مجمد
autumn = fall	الخريف	sweets	حلويات
celebrate	يحتفل	temple	معبد
free	حر - غير مشغول	cupboard	دولاب المطبخ
without	بدون	wardrobe	دولاب الملابس
sign	إشارة	village	قرية
all over the world	جميع أنحاء العالم	Italy	إيطاليا
Sham el- Nessim	شم النسيم	Italian	إيطالي
flowers	زهور	toy	دمية - لعبة أطفال
picnic	نزهة	present	هدية
main park	المنتزه الرئيسي	have a picnic	يقوم بنزهة
music	موسيقى	have a festival	يقوم بعمل احتفال
the new life	الحياة الجديدة	for breakfast	من أجل الإفطار
papyrus	ورق البردي	catch	يصطاد/يمسك/ يلحق بـ
Mother's Day	عيد الأم	family	عائلة
parades	عرض - استعراض	money	فلوس
costumes	أزياء	different	مختلف
fireworks	ألعاب نارية	September	شهر سبتمبر
noisy	صاخب - مزعج	take photos	يلتقط صور
lantern	فانوس	cans	علب
paper lantern	فانوس ورق	park	منتزه عام
envelope	ظرف جواب	museum	متحف
midday	منتصف النهار	afterwards	بعد ذلك
traditionally	تقليدي	relatives	أقارب
colourful	ملون - مبهج	end	نهاية



★ Conjugation of verbs ★

Present	Meaning	Past	P.P
represent	يمثل	represented	represented
pay	يدفع	paid	paid
hold	يعقد - ينظم حفل	held	held
appear	يظهر	appeared	appeared
fill	يملأ	filled	filled
decorate	يزين	decorated	decorated
dress up	يرتدي	dressed up	dressed up
invent	يخترع	invented	invented
put	يضع	put	put
buy	يشترى	bought	bought
take	يأخذ	took	taken
grow	ينمو - يكبر	grew	grown
wear	يرتدي	wore	Worn
smell	يشم	smelt	smelt
paint	يدهن - يلون	painted	painted

★ Prepositions ★

start of	بداية لـ ...	all over the world	في جميع أنحاء العالم
have to + inf.	يضطر أن - يجب أن	hold to + inf.	يعقد - ينظم حفل
in different ways	بطرق مختلفة	for free	مجاًناً - بالمجان
in / on a parade	في استعراض	go into = enter	يدخل

★ in - on - at ★

in [سنة - شهر - فصل - قرن]	in 2011 - in April - in summer - in the next century
on [يوم - تاريخ]	on Sunday - on Christmas Day - on 25 Jan, 2011
at [الساعات - الأوقات الدقيقة]	at 3 o'clock - at noon - at midday - at midnight at sunrise - at bedtime - at dawn

★ Words & Opposites ★

midday	منتصف النهار	midnight	منتصف الليل
appear	يظهر	disappear	يختفي
without	بدون	with	بـ ..
free	حر - فاضي	busy	مشغول
start	يبدأ	end	ينتهي



★ Definitions ★

Festival	: A day or time of the year when people have a holiday from work and celebrate some special event.
parade	: A group of people or vehicles moving through a public place in order to celebrate an important day or event.
costumes	: The clothes worn by people at a particular time.
celebrate	: You do something enjoyable because of a special occasion.

★ Spring Festivals ★

Spring is celebrated in different ways all over the world. It is a very special time of the year. In Egypt, Sham el-Nessim was first held to celebrate the start of spring nearly 4,000 years ago.

In Japan, people celebrate when small flowers first appear on thousands of trees across the country. People go outside and have picnics under the trees with their friends and family.

In the town of Zenica in Bosnia, people have a festival of eggs in spring. Hundreds of eggs are cooked in a big pan for breakfast and these are given to all the people of the town for free.

In Australia, the start of spring is celebrated in September! In the city of Canberra, there is a month-long flower festival to celebrate spring. You can see about a million beautiful flowers in the city's main park, and you can also listen to music.

Why do so many countries celebrate spring? The flowers and eggs all represent the new life that we can start to enjoy after the winter months have ended.

Language notes

ملاحظات لغوية

1- **get dressed** يرتدى ملابس - **dress up** يرتدى ملابس مناسبة

✂ I **get dressed** after I've had a shower

✂ I **dressed up** for my grandfather's funeral. جنازة

2- **appear on trees** يظهر على الأشجار / **under the trees** تحت الأشجار

✂ Thousands of flowers **appear on trees**.

✂ People have picnics **under the trees**.

3 - **free** مجاني / **for free** حر - غير مشغول

✂ He isn't busy, he is **free**.

✂ This food is given **for free**.

4 - **month-long festival** مهرجان او احتفال يدوم لشهر

✂ There is a **month-long festival** to celebrate spring.

5 - **represent** يمثّل او ينوب عن / **present** يقدم - مضارع - هديه

✂ Eggs and flowers **represent** the new life.

✂ We gave him many **presents** on his birthday.



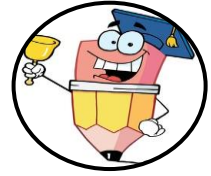
Language Functions

الوظائف اللغوية

- Using sequencing words

استخدام الكلمات التسلسلية

- ✂ **First of all**, (we clean our houses).
- ✂ **Next**, (we decorate our homes).
- ✂ **Afterwards**, (many people go shopping).
- ✂ **After / Before / At** (dinner, children are given envelopes).
- ✂ **At midnight / midday** (there are fireworks).
- ✂ **The next day / morning / afternoon** (we wear our new clothes).



Maher : What will you do after dinner?.

Zaher : I will dress up. **Afterwards** I go to the festival.

Example: مثال

Study the following

1- Without + v + ing

✂ Ahmed had done this **without** asking her.

2- Festival مهرجان / Ceremony طقس

✂ Preparing a **festival** takes years.

✂ A wedding حفل الزفاف / graduation حفل التخرج is **ceremony**.

3- customs تقاليد / costumes ملابس تمثيل / customer زبون

✂ During festivals some people wear lion **costumes**.

4 – good for مناسب لـ / good to عطوف على / good at جيد فى

✂ The Spring air is very **good for** you. ✂ He is **good at** writing English.

5 – On Monday فى يوم الاثنين / On a Monday فى يوم الاثنين

✂ He will travel **on Monday**.

✂ Sham el-Nessim is celebrated **on a Monday** in April.

6 – park حديقة او منتزة او يركن السيارة / bark ينبح

✂ We went to the main **park**. ✂ The dog **barked** when it saw us.

7 - special خاص او مميز / private ملك شخص / public عام (ملك الجميع)

✂ Spring is a very **special** time of the year.

✂ Doctors wear **special** uniforms.

✂ This is our car, it is **private**.

✂ All people can use **public** transport.

8 – spring فصل الربيع او ينبوع مياه

✂ **Spring** is celebrated in different ways.

✂ There are many **springs** in Siwa.

9 – Traditions عادات شخصية / habits عادات عامة

✂ It is people's **tradition** to eat FESEKHA on this day.

✂ His **habit** is to get up early.

✂ Smoking is a bad **habit**.



1-Complete the following dialogue

Samir asks Hany about what he is doing

Samir : (1)

Hany : I'm colouring some eggs.

Samir : Why?

Hany : Today (2)

Samir : Sham El-Nessim is a nice day to celebrate. Where do you suggest spending the day?

Hany : (3)

Samir : (4)

Hany : I will dress up. Afterwards I go to the main park.

2- Write what would you say in each of the following situations:

1- You tell a friend what you did last Saturday at midday.

2- A friend asks you what you do before and after dinner.

3- You want to tell a friend what you will do first on Sham El-Nessim.

4- A friend asks you what you do after you decorate your home.

5- You want to conclude a writing about Sham El-Nessim.

6- Your friend wants your recommendation to spend his holiday.

7- Your younger brother is playing with matches. Advise him.

8- Your friend asks you feeling about yesterday's film.

9- You offer to help your sister.

10- Your brother asks you what you do after you finish your homework.

3- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1- When do people new year in your country?

a- debate b- celebrate c- irrigate d- delete

2- Many countries have a when it is the start of spring.

a- festival b- ceremony c- present d- camera

3- The teacher asks the children what " % "

a- lives b- sees c- rinks d- represents



- 4- Sham el-Nessim is a day for all of us.
a- special b- bad c- frightened d- sad
- 5- You do not have to pay to go into the museum. It is
a- busy b- not free c- free d- expensive
- 6- The children wore historical for the school play.
a- customers b- storms c- costumes d- bicycles
- 7- Many people like to freeze food to it.
a- reserve b- preserve c- serve d- deserve
- 8- At, there were fireworks to welcome the new year.
a- midday b- day c- noon d- midnight
- 9- We walked up the street in a to celebrate the start of spring.
a- parade b- costumes c- festivals d- company
- 10- There was no electricity on the farm, so the farmer used
so that he could read.
a- lanterns b- pumps c- carts d- tractors
- 11- Salt is often used to fish and other food.
a- pack b- preserve c- celebrate d- decorate
- 12- A is an important day with lots of activities.
a- festival b- funeral c- earthquake d- storm
- 13- You don't have to pay any money, it is
a- cheap b- expensive c- free d- high
- 14- Chinese New Year is an important..... in China.
a- project b- crop c- goods d- festival
- 15- Another..... food which is eaten is FESEEKH
a- habit b- traditional c- fast d- custom
- 16- Children eggs by using natural colours.
a- plant b- decorate c- record d- scored
- 17- The red envelopes given to children contain.....
a- messages b- money c- prizes d- books
- 18- To is to be a sign for something.
a- present b- represent c- interest d- irrigate

4-Read and correct the underlined words:

- 1- People often use salt to represent fish and other food. [.....]
- 2- It is now eleven o'clock in the evening. In one hour, it will be midday.
[.....]
- 3- On Father's Day, people give their mums a lot of presents.[.....]
- 4- When people celebrate they use home works. [.....]
- 5- A ceremony is a day or time of the year when people have a holiday
from work and celebrate some special event. [.....]
- 6- Costumers are the clothes worn by people at a particular time.
[.....]



5- Rewrite the following using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning

1- You do not have to pay to go into the museum. (free)

2- People use salt on food to keep it for a long time. (preserve)

3- He enjoyed Sham El-Nessim on the bank of the Nile. (celebrated)

6 - Write an email to your friend Tony about:

" A special day "

- Why is this day celebrated?

- What do you usually do on this day?

- Do you eat any special food?

- Your e- mail address is ali@yahoo.com

- Your friend's e-mail address is tony@yahoo.com

7- Read the following, then answer the questions:

In Sweden, the longest day of the year is celebrated in June. It is the start of a five- week holiday. Most people go on a trip to the country with their families. Children put flowers in their hair and everyone eats a special cake. In the evening, a family meal is eaten. This usually includes herring: there are a lot of these in the sea around Sweden. After people have eaten, they usually go for a walk. Nobody goes to bed before twelve o'clock on this special day! There is sunshine until very late at night in Sweden at this time. In the north it does not get dark at all! It can be difficult to sleep. To help them, people should find a room that is not very light.

A- Answer the following questions:

1- What do most people do in June in Sweden?

2- What are herring?

3- Why do you think that they don't go to bed early in June in Sweden?

B- Choose the correct answer:

4- The main idea of the passage is about.....

a-Swedish food

b-the longest day in Sweden

c-holidays in Sweden

d-Swedish flowers

5- The underlined word "them" refers to

a- children

b- people with out a house

c- people without families

d- people in Sweden



Unit (3)

Festivals & Special Days

Lessons 3&4

★ Vocabulary ★

breeze	نسيم	Egyptians	مصريين
seasons	فصول السنة	along the Nile	بمحاذاة / بطول النيل
fresh air	هواء نقي	traditionally	تقليدياً
boiled eggs	بيض مسلوق	beach	شاطي
bright colours	ألوان زاهية	peach	خوخة
paint	يدهن يلون	pitch	ملعب
traditional food	طعام تقليدي	bitch	أثنى الكلب
FESECKH	فسيخ	felucca	فلوكة - مركب صغير
dried	مجفف	railway station	محطة قطار
Eid al-Fitr	عيد الفطر	scary	مخيف
the end of Ramadan	نهاية رمضان	herring	سمكة الرنقة
natural	طبيعي	Sweden	السويد
art competition	مسابقة فنية	Swedish	سويدي
craft	مهنة - حرفة	period of time	فترة من الوقت
conclusion	خاتمة	lighthouse	منارة
Elephantine-Island	جزيرة فيله	earthquake	زلزال
temperature	درجة الحرارة	fort Qaitbey	قلعة قاتيباي
photographs	صور فوتوغرافية	helpful	متعاون
thumb	أصبع الإبهام	Chinese	صيني
thirst	عطش	China	الصين
freeze	يتجمد	rock	صخرة
electricity	كهرباء	Mother's Day	عيد الأم
farm	مزرعة	everyone	كل واحد - الجميع
balloons	بالونات	clothes	ملابس
present	هدية	a five week holiday	أجازة خمسة أسابيع
parade	موكب - استعراض	freezer	مجمد
costumes	أزياء	fridge	ثلاجة
messages	رسائل	moon	القمر
special	خاص	floor	الأرضية - الطابق
private	خاص (ملك شخص)	lantern	فانوس



★ Conjugation of verbs ★

Present	Meaning	Past	P.P
smell	يشم	smelt	smelt
preserve	يحفظ	preserved	preserved
join	يتصل - يلتحق بـ	joined	joined
blow	يهب	blew	blown
serve	يقدم	served	served
conclude	يختم	concluded	concluded
summarise	يلخص	summarised	summarised
welcome	يرحب	welcomed	welcomed
order	يرتب - يأمر	ordered	ordered
mean	يعني - يقصد به	meant	meant
leave	يترك - يغادر	left	left
feel	يشعر	felt	felt
fill with	يملاً بـ	filled with	filled with
collapse	ينهار - يتهدم	collapsed	collapsed
contain	يحتوي على	contained	contained
last	يستمر - يدوم	lasted	lasted
boil	يغلي	boiled	boiled

★ Prepositions ★

in conclusion	في الخاتمة- ختاماً	help+ obj.+ (to) inf.	يساعد .. لكي..
decorate ... with ...	يزين بـ	go out to + inf.	يخرج لـ ...
decorated in ..	مزين بـ	start in about	يبدأ في حوالي
go shopping for	يذهب للتسوق من أجل	first of all	قبل كل شيء/ أولاً
It's important to + inf	من المهم أن ...	think of / about	يفكر في ...
The best time to + inf	أفضل وقت لكي ..	dried with salt	مجفف بالملح
wear+ شيء + for+ شيء	يرتدي .. من أجل ..	look at	ينظر إلي
ask about	يسأل عن	look up	يبحث عن كلمة
go for a walk	يذهب للتمشية	look for	يبحث عن شيء
go on a trip	يذهب في رحلة قصيرة	Welcome to + مكان	مرحباً بكم في ..
walk on the moon	يمشي على سطح القمر	on the first floor	في الطابق الأول
walk in the sun	يمشي في الشمس	for a long time	لمدة طويلة



★ Words & Opposites ★

BCE	قبل الميلاد	ADE	بعد الميلاد
private	خاص (ملك شخص)	public	عام
Inside	بالداخل	Outside	بالخارج
clean	نظيف	dirty	قذر - متسخ
good	جيد	bad	سيء - رديء
the best	الأفضل	the worst	الأسوء
midnight = 12 am	منتصف الليل	midday = 12 pm	منتصف النهار

★ Definitions ★

free	Without having to pay any money
preserve	To keep something from being damaged
parade	An event in which people wear colourful costumes and move down the street

★ SHAM EL-NESSIM ★

- Sham el-Nessim means smelling the breeze and it is celebrated all over Egypt On a Monday in April or May. The festival started in about 2700 BCE. The ancient Egyptian year had three seasons and Sham el-Nessim was held to celebrate the start of spring. Sham el-Nessim isn't celebrated in any other country.
- Today, Sham el-Nessim is a holiday and families go out to enjoy the fresh spring air. The spring air is very good for you! People often have a picnic in the country, in parks or along the Nile.
- Special food is eaten at Sham el-Nessim. Traditionally, boiled eggs are eaten for breakfast. Eggs are decorated in bright colours by children. They usually paint the eggs in the morning and leave them in the sun to dry.
- Another traditional food which is eaten on this day is FESEEKH: Fish that is dried with salt. This tradition also dates back to ancient Egyptian times. When people had more fresh fish than they could eat, they put salt on it to preserve it.
- It is important to buy FESEEKH from a clean shop so that you are sure that the fish will be good for you.

Is Sham el-Nessim celebrated in any other country? Why?



★ Listening Text ★

My name is Li. I am from China. My favourite festival is New Year. It lasts for about eight days. It is the most important festival for Chinese people and we start preparing for it a week before it starts. First of all, we clean our houses. We sweep and wash all the floors, doors and windows. Next, we decorate our homes with red paper lanterns. Afterwards, many people go shopping for new clothes.

There is always a special meal on the night before New Year's Day. Relatives come from far away to join their families. Lots of special New Year food is eaten, but the most important food is usually fish. Dinner is usually eaten at home, not often in a restaurant. After dinner, children are given red envelopes with some money inside by their parents. At midnight, there are fireworks and the sky is filled with colour and noise.

The next morning, on the first day of the New Year, we wear our new clothes and say congratulations to our friends and neighbours. Traditionally, young people visit older people to say Happy New Year to them. At midday, there are parades where people dress up in colourful costumes. Some people wear huge lion costumes, too.

Language notes

ملاحظات لغوية

1- suggest + V. ing. يقترح / mean + V. ing يعنى - يقصد به

✂ Adel **suggested** eating another traditional food.

✂ Sham el-Nessim **means** smelling the breeze.

2- everyone + (فعل مفرد) الجميع / كل واحد / nobody + (فعل مفرد) لا أحد

✂ Everyone **takes** a trip on a felucca.

✂ Nobody **visits** the museum today.

3- date back to يعود تاريخها الى

✂ This tradition **dates back to** 200 years.

4- along the Nile بطول او بمحاذاة النيل

✂ People often have picnics **along the Nile**.

5 - traditions عادات شخصية * habits تقاليد عامة

✂ It is people's **tradition** to eat FESEEKH on this day.

✂ His **habit** is to get up early. ✂ Smoking is a bad **habit**.

6 - preserve يحفظ / reserve = book يحجز / serve يخدم - يقدم

✂ We **preserve** food in the fridge.

✂ We will **reserve** tickets tomorrow. ✂ The restaurant **serves** lunch.



Grammar

Active & Passive

المعلوم والمجهول

Present and Past simple passive

القاعدة العامة

المفعول
Object

+

V. to be
حسب زمن الجملة
والنفي والإثبات

+

التصريف الثالث للفعل
P.P. (V3)

+

الفاعل + by
(يمكن حذفه)

المبنى للمجهول في زمن المضارع البسيط

1

مفعول به + (s) مصدر / مصدر + فاعل

- The people **cook** eggs in a big pan.
- Manal **wears** a coat in winter.

مفعول به + is / are + P.P.

- Eggs **are cooked** in a big pan.
- A coat **is worn** in winter (by Manal)

2

مفعول به + مصدر + don't/doesn't + فاعل

- Amer **doesn't drink** milk.
- They **don't drive** cars.

مفعول به + isn't / aren't + P.P.

- Milk **isn't drunk** (by Amer).
- Cars **aren't driven** (by them).

3

مفعول به + مصدر + فاعل + Do/Does ؟

- **Does** Ali play football?
- Why **do** people **preserve** fish?

Is / Are + مفعول به + P.P. ؟

- **Is** football **played** (by Ali)?
- Why **is** fish **preserved**?

المبنى للمجهول في زمن الماضي البسيط

1

مفعول به + (ed) مصدر / فعل شاذ + فاعل

- Huda **decorated** the flat.
- Hams **wrote** the recipes yesterday.

مفعول به + was / were + P.P.

- The flat **was decorated**.
- The recipes **were written** yesterday.

2

مفعول به + مصدر + didn't + فاعل

- She **didn't write** the letter.
- He **didn't use** pencils.

مفعول به + wasn't/weren't + P.P.

- The letter **wasn't written** (by her)
- Pencils **weren't used** (by him).

3

مفعول به + مصدر + فاعل + Did ؟

- **Did** He **send** the e-mails?
- Why **did** people **dry** fish with salt?

Was / Were + مفعول به + P.P. ؟

- **Were** the e-mails **sent** (by him)?
- Why **was** fish **dried** with salt?

مبنى للمعلوم

You will face it like that

مبنى للمجهول

- ✂ The pilot flies the plane. [is]
- ✂ Ahmed played tennis. [was]
- ✂ I didn't send the e-mail. [sent]
- ✂ Why do you study English? [is]
- ✂ He gave me a present. [was]
- ✂ No body beat me at chess. [passive]

- ✂ The plane is flown by the pilot.
- ✂ Tennis was played by Ahmed.
- ✂ The e-mail wasn't sent by me.
- ✂ Why is English studied by you?
- ✂ A present was given to me by him.
- ✂ I wasn't beaten at chess.

تذكر أن :

1- نبدأ بالمفعول (كفاعل).

2- نأتي بـ (V. to be) حسب الزمن والنفي والإثبات

3- نضع التصريف الثالث للفعل.

4- نضع (by) ثم الفاعل (إذا كان ضمير يحول ضمير مفعول)



Lessons 3&4



Exercises

Lessons 3&4

1-Complete the following dialogue

Zaki and his friend Ahmed are talking about Sham El-Nessim.

Zaki : Hello Ahmed.

Ahmed : Hello, Zaki. You look happy. (1).....?

Zaki : Yes, I enjoyed Sham El-Nessim very much.

Ahmed: Where did you spend it?

Zaki : (2)

Ahmed: What was the weather like on the beach?

Zaki : (3)

Ahmed: You are lucky. I didn't go out because mother was ill.

Zaki : Oh, I'm sorry to hear that. (4) ?

Ahmed: She's doing better now.

2- What do you say in the following situations :

1- You give someone instructions to make tea.

.....

2- You apologize for coming late.

.....

3- You are asked why you look happy.

.....

4- Your brother doesn't study his lessons. Advise him.

.....

5- Give a recommendation to a tourist about the places he can visit.

.....

3 - Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1- How is Sham el-Nessim by most people these days?

a- decorate b- decorates c- decorated d- decorating

2- The museum by thousands of tourists every day.

a- was visited b- is visiting c- is visited d- visited

3- The guidebook in 1995, but it is still used today.

a- was written b- is writing c- is written d- wrote

4- His passport when he was running to catch the train.

a- was losing b- is lost c- was lost d- lost

5- Egyptian bazaars to be the best in Africa.

a- were thought b- is thought c- are thought d- thought

6- Costumes are at different festivals around the world.

a- wear b- wearing c- wears d- worn



7- After the houses, they are cleaned.

a- were decorated b- decorated c- are decorated d- decorating

8- What to children at New Year today?

a- give b- gave c- are given d- was given

9- The first pizza..... by an Italian.

a- is invented b- invented c- invents d- was invented

10- Sham el-Nessim was first to celebrate the start of spring nearly 4,000 years ago.

a- holds b- hold c- holding d- held

11- It is not too hot on the beach because there is a nice

a- breeze b- cloud c- storm d- wave

12- My favourite is Eid al-Fitr. It is held to the end of Ramadan.

a- birthday b- festival c- ceremony d- costume

13- At some festivals, children join a parade and wear colourful

a- skies b- customers c- costumes d- festivals

14- When we eggs for Sham el-Nessim, we try to use natural colours from plants.

a- see b- fill c- drink d- decorate

15- When we stood on the beach, we could feel a blowing from the sea?

a- breeze b- cloud c- storm d- wave

16- of all, the two-day festival is opened at 9 a.m.

a. Before b. First c. Next d. At

17- Let's go to a to hear some music.

a. concrete b. concert c. funeral d. pharmacy

18- How cooked?

a. fish was b. was fish c. will fish d. fish will

19- Ali to hospital because he was ill.

a. was taken b. took c. was taking d. takes

20- The Pyramids by the ancient Egyptians.

a. are built b. are building c. were built d. were building

21- Special foods at the festival?

a. eat b. is eaten c. are eaten d. eat

22- Doctors and nurses wear special

a. uniforms b. helmets c. cap d. shoes

23- In dark, we can use

a. lanterns b. horses c. carriages d. buses



24- Sham el-Nessim means the breeze.

- a. smelling b. smell c. smells d. smelt

25- The festival started in about

- a. 2700 BCE b. BCE 2700 c. 2700 AD d. 2700 ADE

26- When we food, we mix it with spices.

- a. reason b. season c. poison d. dry

28- Another food which is eaten is FESEEKH

- a. habit b. traditional c. fast d. custom

4-Read and correct the underlined words:

1- Eid al-Fitr is held to breeze the end of Ramadan. (.....)

2- Who were fireworks invent by? (.....)

3- The red envelopes that children are give contain messages. (.....)

4 Spring is celebrate all over the world. (.....)

5- At 12 o'clock, there are fireworks and the sky is filing with colours. (.....)

6- Oranges is grown in hot countries. (.....)

7- Coats worn in winter. (.....)

8- Jam is keeping in that cupboard. (.....)

9- Many photos are took of the Pyramids every day. (.....)

10- What kind of food can you drive with salt? (.....)

5- Rewrite the following using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:

1- Do you use lanterns to see at night? (Are lanterns.....)

2- We give money or food to poor people. (Money.....)

3- We make mum a cup of tea. (A cup of tea.....)

4- The police took the thief to prison yesterday. (The thief)

5- We export cotton to other countries. (Cotton.....)

6- Hesham bought a new car last week. (A new car.....)

7- He didn't send the letter to him. (The letter)

8- The government built new schools last year. (...were...)



(Where was...)

(Milk...)

(grown)

(are made)

(celebrated)

(was)

(passive)

(given)

(People)

(bought)

(sent)

(seen)

- Why you think Egypt is a good place for tourists to visit



Unit (3)



Test (1)



Unit (3)

1 Supply the following dialogue:

Jane and Nada are talking about Sham el-Nessim

Jane : Do you have any spring festivals in Egypt?

Nada : (1)

Jane : What do you do on Sham el-Nessim day?

Nada: (2)

Jane : (3)?

Nada: FESEEKH is preserved fish with salt.

Jane : (4)?

Nada: No, I don't like eating FESEEKH. I like eating herrings.

2 What do you say in the following situations

1- You give someone instructions to make boiled eggs.

.....

2- You apologize for not doing your homework.

.....

3- You are asked why you look sad.

.....

3 Read the following passage and answer the questions:

People have different festivals all over the world. Some festivals last for a day or even a week. Some celebrate the start of spring or another season while others celebrate good harvest or religious occasions.

In Egypt, the biggest and greatest festival is Ramadan which is a religious festival and it lasts for a whole month. In Ramadan, Muslims fast from dawn to sunset. Rich people serve food for the poor people. Children hang paper lanterns in the streets in front of their houses. Mosques are full of people especially at night prayer and dawn prayer.

To fulfill fasting well, Muslims should pay akat al-Fitr to those who deserve it.

A) Answer the following questions:

1- How can Muslims fulfill their fasting well?

.....

2- Why do people have festivals?

.....

3- Why do you think the poor are happy in Ramadan?

.....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

4- Ramadan is a festival.

a- harvest

b- food

c- religious

d- sports

5- In Ramadan, children put lanterns in front of their houses.

a- pepper

b- glass

c- metal

d- paper



The Reader : Black Beauty

4 (a) Read and match:

A	B
1-John Manly	a) was the new owner.
2-Farmer Grey	b) the place where Gordon lived.
3- Berwick Park	c) was Gordon's helper.
4-Merrylegs and Ginger	d) are two horse who are Black Beauty's friends.
	e) bought Black Beauty from Farmer Grey.

1- What did the children bring Merrylegs?

2- Why didn't the children visit the horses any more?

3- What name did the wife suggest for the horse and why?

4- What did Merrylegs say about Ginger?

5- What did Ginger say about people she worked with in the past?

5 Choose the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

1-When is Sham el-Nessim in Egypt.

a- celebrate b- celebrated c- celebrates d- celebrating

2-It is not too hot on the beach because there is a nice

a- breeze b- cloud c- storm d- wave

3-I am going to my flat before Eid al-Fitr.

a- draw b- decorate c- pollute d- directorate

4- At some festivals kids join the parade and wear colourful

a- shorts b- socks c- costumes d- cloth

5-Who were fireworks by?

a- inventing b- invents c- invent d- invented

6-The parade watched by thousands of people every year.

a- is b- was c- are d- were

6 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) in brackets:

1- People preserve food in the fridge (Food)

2- My parents gave me new clothes for Eid al-Fitr . (was)

3- I did my homework then I watched the film . (Afterwards)



7 Write a paragraph of (7) sentences about :

"Sham el-Nessim"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Unit (3)



Test (2)



Unit (3)

1 Supply the following dialogue

Hala and Sara are talking about festivals.

Hala : What are you reading?

Sara : (1)

Hala : Festivals! Have you read about Spring Feast?

Sara : (2)

Hala : (3) ?

Sara : People do many things and eat eggs and FESEEKH.

Hala : (4) ?

Sara : No, Egypt is the only country that celebrate Sham el-Nessim.

2 What do you say in the following situations

1 – You start to tell a story.

.....

3 – You offer to help your mother.

.....

2 – You are asked to summarise a story in one or two sentences.

.....

3 Read the following passage and answer the questions:

Naguib Mahfouz was born in Cairo on December eleventh 1911. He began writing when he was seventeen. In 1945, he married an Egyptian woman with whom he had two daughters. His first novel was published in 1939. His works include the novels as well as several collections of short stories. He is the writer of more than thirty novels, more than 350 short stories and a lot of movie scripts. Half of his novels have been made into films. He was the only Arabic language writer who won the Nobel Prize for Literature.



A) Answer the following questions :

1- How many daughters did Naguib Mahfouz have?

.....

2- When was the first novel published?

.....

3 – What prize did Naguib Mahfouz win?

.....

B) Choose the correct answer from a,b, c or d :

4- Naguib Mahfouz was born in

a- Alexandria

b- Cairo

c- Giza

d- Tanta

5- Some of his novels have been made into

a- papers

b- prizes

c- films

d- schools

The Reader : Black Beauty

4 (a) Read and match:

(A)	(B)
1. John thanked the man	a. they would fall into the river
2. Gordon thanked Beauty	b. because he told them about the bridge
3. Black beauty felt pleased	c. because he saved them
4. If they crossed the bridge	d. when he saw the gates of Birtwick Park
	e. they would fall into the sea.

B – Answer the following questions

1 – What fell across the road in front of them?

.....

.....

2 – How were Gordon, John and Beauty Lucky?

.....

.....

3 – Why couldn't they go forward?

.....

.....

4 – Why did they have to a different way?

.....

.....

5 – Why did Black Beauty stop at the bridge?

.....

.....



Practice test (1-A)



(A) Language Functions

1- Finish the following dialogue:

Heba is going to meet her friends today

Mother : What are you going to do with your friends today?

Heba : We want to have a picnic but we don't know where to go.

(1)

Mother : Garden Park is a nice place for a picnic.

Heba : Yes, it is. What can take for the picnic?

Mother : (2)

Heba : That's a good idea. Do I need my hat today, Mum?

Mother : (3) The sun is very strong today.

2- Write what you would say in each of the following situations:

1- You drop a glass on the kitchen floor. Your sister walks into the room.

.....

2- A friend asks you what you thought of a scary film that has just finished.

.....

3- You tell a friend what you did last Saturday at midday.

.....

(B) Reading Comprehension

3- Read the following, then answer the questions:

In Sweden, the longest day of the year is celebrated in June. It is the start of a five-week holiday. Most people go on a trip to the country with their families. Children put flowers in their hair and everyone eats a special cake. In the evening, a family meal is eaten. This usually includes herring there are a lot of these in the sea around Sweden. After people have eaten, they usually go for a walk. Nobody goes to bed before twelve o'clock on this special day! There is sunshine until very late at night in Sweden at this time. In the north, it does not get dark at all it can be difficult to sleep. To help them, people should find a room that is not very light.

1- What do most people do in June in Sweden?

.....

2- What are herring?

.....

3- Why do you think that people do not go to bed early in June in Sweden?

.....



a- Swedish food b- the longest day in Sweden
c- holidays in Sweden d- Swedish flowers

a- children
b- people without a house
c- people without families
d- people in Sweden

4- A- Match column A with column B

(A)	(B)	
1- Farmer Grey	a- The horse who tells the story.	(.....)
2- Black Beauty	b- A short, fat horse.	(.....)
3- Merrylegs	c- A horse who had a difficult past.	(.....)
4- Ginger	d- A horse who forgot his mother's advice.	(.....)
	e- Black Beauty's first owner.	(.....)

1- What advice did Black Beauty's mother give him?

2- What was Birtwick Park like?

3- What did the horses think of Birtwick Park?

4- How do we know that Black Beauty had good owners?

5-Do you think that Merrylegs was wrong to throw the older boys off his back? why / Why not?

5- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1- When is Sham el-Nessim..... in Egypt?

a- celebrated b- celebrate c- celebrates d- celebrating

2- This book has..... pages than that book.

a- little b- less c- fewer d- least

3- People often drink..... water in hot weather than when it is cold.

a- less b- least c- more d- most

4- It is not too hot on the beach because there is a nice

a- breeze b- cloud c- storm d- wave

5- The restaurant in the guidebook was a very good.....

a- review b- parade c- information d- recommendation

6- | don't know how to get to your house. Can you give me.....?

a- activities b- directions c- costumes d- conclusions



1- When you go to Luxor, I think you should visit the museum. (recommend)

3- Manal always helps people. (helpful)

1- The tourist information centre gave us a souvenir about what to do in the city.

3- People often use salt to represent fish and other food.

- You tell your English friend how Mother's Day is celebrated in Egypt.

- You just watched a great film and you want to tell your friend about it.



Practice test (1-B)



(A) - Language Functions

1- Finish the following dialogue:

Self has just watched a film at Yassin's house.

Seif : That was a very good film.

Yassin : Yes, it was. (1)

Seif : I was frightened when Detective Zaki was in the desert. Why did he go there?

Yassin : (2).....

Seif : Now I understand. Do you recommend watching his other detective films?

Yassin : (3)

2- Write what you would say in each of the following situations:

1- A tourist asks you where he can buy a map. You know that the tourist information centre gives out maps for free.

.....

2- Your friend has finished a book. The end of the book made you feel sad. You want to know if your friend thinks the same.

.....

3- A friend asks you what you do before and after dinner.

.....

(B) - Reading Comprehension

3- Read the following, then answer the questions:

It's my first visit to Egypt. My friends advised me to go to Alexandria. It's summer. However, it is not very hot there, so many tourists go at this time. I'm staying in a hotel in Alexandria now. It is Friday, so there is little traffic in the streets. The hotel is near the sea and I can hear the boats. The hotel is also near the tourist information Centre, but it is closed today.

Tomorrow I will ask about what I should see in the city. The guidebook says that I should visit Fort Qaitbey. The stones in the fort are from the famous lighthouse. They were used after the lighthouse collapsed in an earthquake in 1303.

Best wishes,
Andy

1- Why do many tourists go to Alexandria in the summer?

.....

2- Who do you think Andy is writing this email to and why? ...

.....

3- What is the main idea of the email?

.....



4- The word Collapsed means.

- a- was built b- fell c- started d- was seen

5- The underlined word it refers to.....

- a- the hotel b- the tourist information Centre
c- the road d- Fort Qaitbey

C- The Reader

4) A- Match column A with column B:

(A)	(B)	
1- Black Beauty	a) She said, "Never bite or kick, even when you are just playing a game	(.....)
2- Black Beauty's mother	b) This horse had one white foot	(.....)
3- Squire Gordon	c) This horse had short, fat legs.	(.....)
4- Squire Gordon's wife	d) She named the horse "Black Beauty".	(.....)
	e) Farmer Grey Sold Black Beauty to this person.	(.....)

B- Answer the following questions:

1- Who helped Black Beauty to learn to pull a carriage?

.....

.....

2- Why did Ginger sometimes bite or kick people ?

.....

.....

3- Why did Squire Gordon's children stop visiting Merrylegs?

.....

.....

4- Do you think that Merrylegs was right to behave badly with the children?
Why? / Why not?

.....

.....

5- Do you think that Squire Gordon was right to be angry with a man who worked for him? Why? / Why not?

.....

.....

(D)- Usage and Writing

5) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1- It is cold and windy today. When you go outside, you..... a coat.

- a- wear b- should wear c- shouldn't wear d- are wearing

2- students in our school have visited England.

- a- Few b- Little c- Less d- The least



3- The museum..... by thousands of tourists every day.

- a- visited b- is visiting c- is visited d- was visited

4- The students usually stay in a youth..... when they visit the city.

- a- hotel b- centre c- hostel d- office

5- Salt is often used to fish and other food.

- a- pack b- preserve c- celebrate d- decorate

6- The teacher asked us to write a of our visit to the museum.

- a- character b- title c- conclusion d- description

6- Rewrite the following using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:

1- March has more days than February. (fewer)

2- You do not have to pay to go into the museum. (free)

3- I advise you to visit Aswan. (should)

7) Read and correct the underlined words:

1- We had good descriptions to the library, and found it easily. (.....)

2- When I'm frightened, sometimes begin to trouble. (.....)

3- It is now eleven o'clock in the evening. In one hour, it will be midday. (.....)

8- Write a paragraph of seven (7) sentences about one of the following:

- A review of a book you liked.
- Why you think Egypt is a good place for tourists to visit?

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



Unit (4)

Science and Technology

Lessons 1&2

★ Vocabulary ★

Science	علوم - علم
scientist	عالم
technology	تكنولوجيا
interview	مقابلة شخصية
STEM schools	مدارس المتفوقين
essential	ضروري - اساسي
corridor	ممر
engineer	مهندس
engineering	هندسة
maths	رياضيات
special schools	مدارس خاصة
ability	قدرة
around the world	حول العالم
online	متصل بالانترنت
do a project	ينجز مشروع
work together	يعمل معاً
solve problems	يحل مشاكل
results	نتائج
hardworking	جاد - مجتهد
scientific	علمي
text	نص (للقراءة)
skill	مهارة
send an email	يرسل بريد إلكتروني
warm clothes	ملابس دافئة
low price	سعر منخفض
machine	آلة - ماكينة
windy	عاصف
work hard	يعمل بجد واجتهاد
bored	زهقان - يشعر بالملل
a uniform	زي موحد

polluted water	ماء ملوث
cause	سبب
invention	اختراع
object	شيء
likely	من المحتمل
achievements	إنجازات
how fast	كم / ما سرعة ..؟
attention	انتباه
certain	متأكد
through	من خلال
data	بيانات
make a graph	يرسم مخطط بياني
expert	خبير
e-book	كتاب إلكتروني
medicine	طب
win an award	يفوز بجائزة
heart disease	أمراض القلب
archaeologist	عالم آثار
tablet	كمبيوتر لوحي
enter competitions	يدخل منافسات
airport	مطار
traffic	زحام
dinosaur	ديناصور
animal waste	فضلات الحيوانات
device	جهاز
advice	نصيحة
material	مادة خام
source	منبع / مصدر
production	إنتاج
operation	عملية جراحية



★ Conjugation of verbs ★

Present	Meaning	Past	P.P
understand	يفهم	understood	understood
develop	يتطور - ينمو	developed	developed
focus on	يركز على ..	focused on	focused on
encourage	يشجع	encouraged	encouraged
work	يعمل	worked	worked
solve	يحل	solved	solved
check	يفحص	checked	checked
guess	يخمن	guessed	guessed
achieve	ينجز - يحقق	achieved	achieved
fall	يسقط - الخريف	fell	fallen
fight	يكافح - يتشاجر-يقاتل	fought	fought
finish	ينهي	finished	finished
prevent	يمنع	prevented	prevented
remove	يزيل	removed	removed
enter	يدخل	entered	entered
suggest	يقترح	suggested	suggested
win	يفوز	won	won

★ Prepositions ★

focus on + V.ing / n.	يركز على	able to + inf.	قادر على
around the world	حول العالم	carry around	يتجول
interested in +n./ V.ing	مهتم بـ	fall through	يسقط من خلال ..
caused by	تسبب عن	at a low price	بسعر منخفض

★ Words & Opposites ★

in the future	مستقبل	in the past	ماضي
modern	حديث	old - ancient	قديم - أزلي
different	مختلف	similar to / the same as	متشابه
the latest	الأحدث - الأخير	the first	الأول
usual	عادي	unusual	غير عادي
easy	سهل	difficult - hard	صعب
fit	لائق بدنياً - صحيحاً	unfit	غير لائق - بدنياً
low	منخفض	high	مرتفع



★ Definitions ★

laptop	: A small computer that you can carry with you
smart phone	: A mobile phone that can work like a computer
e-book	: A book that can be read online
data	: Information or facts.
Wi-fi	: Something which allows mobile computers and phones to connect to the internet
STEM schools	: Special schools which focus on developing students' ability in (science, technology, engineering and maths)
award	: A prize someone gets for something they have achieved.

★ STEM Schools ★

Today, knowing how to use modern technology is essential because people use it every day in schools, at home and at work. It can be easy if you don't know how to use a computer or send an email. People with many different jobs, such as teachers, engineers and scientists all need to understand how to use the latest technology.

Students who are very good at STEM subjects (science, technology, engineering and maths) can also help develop the technology of the future. STEM schools are special schools which focus on developing students' ability in these subjects. There are now STEM schools around the world where lessons are different to those in usual schools. Teachers encourage students to do projects where they work together to solve problems.

A lesson might be about how fast a ball falls through the air, or it might be about using data to make a graph. Expert teachers help the students through the projects and check their results.

In Egypt, there are now STEM schools around the country and more will be built in the future. STEM school students must be hardworking. All their lessons are in English, so that they can understand and use scientific texts from around the world while they study.

Experts say that there will be many more jobs in the future that need skills in STEM subjects, when they finish studying, STEM school students will be able to work in exciting jobs that will use the skills that they have learnt.



Language notes

ملاحظات لغوية

1- STEM :هى اختصار الحروف الأولى للكلمات الآتية

Science, technology, engineering and mathematics = (STEM).

2- Focus on + [V. ing / n.] = concentrate on + [V. ing / n.] يركز على

STEM schools focus on students' abilities.

3- hardworking مجتهد / work hard يعمل بجد

He is a hardworking dentist. He works hard all the time.

STEM school students must be hardworking.

4- the last الأخير / the latest الأحدث/الأخير

Ali was the last boy to arrive. Have you heard the latest news?

We all need to understand how to use the latest technology.

5- online غير متصل بالانترنت / offline متصل بالانترنت / عبر الانترنت

She buys her things online. (عبر الانترنت)

This device can't be online. (متصل بالانترنت)

He was offline yesterday. (غير متصل بالانترنت)

6- smart ذكي - أنيق

He's wearing a smart suit. I want to buy a smart phone.

7- essential = very important هام - أساسي

Modern technology is essential because people use it every day.

8- encourage + to + inf. [يشجع ... لكى ...] مصدر الفعل

Teachers encourage students to do projects.

My father encouraged me to be a scientist.

9- Finish + (verb + ing / noun) ينهى / able to + (inf. مصدر الفعل) على قادر

When Manar finishes studying, she will be an engineer.

STEM school students will be able to work in exciting jobs.

10- so that + can + inf. فعل مصدر + فاعل + حملة مضارع

All the lessons are in English so that they can use scientific texts.

He was smart so that he could solve the problems.

11- الملكية (للمفرد) (s) / الملكية (للجمع) (s')

STEM schools focus on developing students' ability. (جمع)

Ahmed's bed is very comfortable. (مفرد)

12- similar to / the same as يشبه / نفس

My shirt is similar to yours. My book is the same as your book.

13- bored مممل / يشعر بالملل

The woman on the train might be bored. (هي تشعر بالملل)

The woman on the train is boring. (هي التي تسبب الملل للآخرين)



Language Functions

الوظائف اللغوية

- Expressing certainty	التعبير عن التأكد
✎ I'm sure (he/she /it) is ...	- He win a prize. I'm sure he is proud.
✎ (He/She/It) must be ...	- She didn't answer. She must be outside.
✎ (He / She / It) can't be ...	- He is an honest boy. He can't be a thief. (نفي)
- Expressing uncertainty	التعبير عن عدم التأكد
✎ I'm not sure (he / she / it) is ...	- I'm not sure he is a scientist.
✎ (He / She / It) might be ...	- She might be your sister.
✎ Perhaps (he / she / it) will ...	- Perhaps Mona will win award.

Study the following

1- Let ... يدع / allow ... يسمح

- ✎ [مصدر + let + مفعول + فاعل] My mum let me watch T.V.
 ✎ [مصدر + allow + مفعول + to + inf.] Dad allows me to go out.

2- V. to be + interested in + [V.ing / noun] مهتم بـ / مغرم بـ

- ✎ I'm interested in reading.
 ✎ I was interested in catching butterflies.

3- prefer يفضل :

- ✎ [مصدر + prefer + to + inf.] She prefers to drink tea.
 ✎ [مصدر + prefer + v+ ing] She prefers drinking tea to coffee.

3- prefer ... عن ... : (للمقارنة) شيء to شيء

- ✎ I prefer tea to coffee. ✎ I prefer English to Arabic.

4- would ('d) prefer to + inf. (يتمنى - يرغب)

- ✎ I'd prefer to go by myself.
 ✎ She'd prefer not to drive at night.

5- would ('d) prefer to + inf. ... rather than + inf (للمقارنة)

- ✎ I'd prefer to go skiing this year rather than go on a beach holiday

6- look + (Adj. صفة) = seem + (Adj. صفة) [يبدو]

- ✎ He didn't sleep well. He looks tired. ✎ You seem smart.

7- around the world يتجول / حول العالم / carry around

- ✎ There are now STEM schools around the world.
 ✎ Tablets are easier to carry around than computers.

8- together معاً / مع بعضهم البعض

- ✎ STEM schools students can do projects together.
 ✎ They work together to solve problems.



1-Complete the following dialogue

Amr and are talking about their friend Moneer Fikry

Amr : Do you remember our friend Monir Fikry?

Adel : Yes, of course. He was the cleverest student in our class.

Amr : I met him last week. He is in Cairo STEM School.

Adel : (1)

Amr : A STEM school is a special school which can focus on developing students' ability in science, technology, engineering and maths.

Adel : Are lessons different to those in usual school?

Amr : (2)

Adel : Are their lessons in Arabic or in English?

Amr : (3)

Adel : (4)

Amr : He wants to be a scientist in the future.

2- Write what would you say in each of the following situations:

1- Your mother asks you how you did on your exam. Express certainty.

.....

2- You are sure that your father is at home.

.....

3- You aren't sure that Ali will win the race.

.....

4- Ahmed will come by train. Express uncertainty.

.....

5-The sky has a lot of dark clouds. You are sure it is going to rain.

.....

6- You are sure your father is late because of the traffic jam.

.....

7- Something is moving at night. You aren't sure if it is a cat or not.

.....

8- You see an expensive car. You are sure it belongs to a rich man.

.....

9- She wears a hat and has a camera. She is a tourist. Express certainty.

.....

10- A man drives a car. You don't know if it is his car or not.

.....



3 - Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1- If something is essential, it is
a- quite difficult b- very important c- not important d- very easy
- 2- The scientists have a new medicine to help fight heart disease.
a- developed b- dropped c- dried d- done
- 3- Ali's cousin is studying at university.
a- engineer b- engine c- engineering d- engineers
- 4- The students studied a which showed the number of tourists who visited Cairo in different months,
a- goal b- data c- future d- graph
- 5- An is someone who has very special skill.
a- expert b- expire c- experiment d- exam
- 6- Teachers STEM students to enter competitions.
a- hit b- encourage c- visit d- stay
- 7- My grandfather has never bought an because he doesn't have a computer to read it on..
a- e-book b- book c- novel d- story
- 8- Omar won an /a for his amazing invention.
a- word b- work c- award d- way
- 9- It is to take your passport when you go to another country.
a- enormous b- essential c- enjoyable d- easy
- 10- Ola is always She will do very well in her exams.
a- noisy b- exhausted c- hardworking d- lazy
- 11- STEM schools are special schools which on developing students' ability in these subjects.
a- sleep b- drive c- focus d- feed
- 12- Dina used the she collected to make a graph.
a- goal b- data c- future d- graph
- 13- school students usually understand new technology.
a- STEP b- STAND c- STEM d- TEAM
- 14- It was not a good film so he left the cinema because he got
a- bored b- interesting c- interested d- boring
- 15- Please let me you a drink.
a- getting b- gets c- to get d- get

4- Read and correct the underlined words:

- 1- I don't talk much on my graph. I use it to send photos and messages.
[.....]
- 2- Travellers want free data in airports because they need to send emails.
[.....]
- 3- I don't like engines because I don't enjoy reading novels online.
[.....]



[.....]

[.....]

[.....]

[.....]

[.....]

[.....]

[.....]

(let)

(would prefer)

(interested in)

(an expert in)

- E-books



Unit (4)

Science and Technology

Lessons 3&4

★ Vocabulary ★

laptop	كمبيوتر محمول	probably	من المحتمل
e-book	كتاب إلكتروني	experiment	تجربة
smart phone	هاتف زكي	prize	جائزة
wi-fi	اتصال لاسلكي بالانترنت	coin	عملة معدنية
the internet	الانترنت	sure	متأكد
online	عبر الانترنت	perhaps	ربما
how good	ما درجة إجابة؟	certain	متأكد
essay	مقالة	gold medal	ميدالية ذهبية
neat	محكم - منظم - رافع	do well	ادى ما في وسعه - يجيد
handwriting	خط اليد	chance	فرصة
bookshop	مكتبة بيع كتب	academic	اكاديمي
geography	جغرافيا	electrician	كهربائي
information	معلومات	electrical	يعمل بالكهرباء
bottle of water	زجاجة ماء	electricity	الكهرباء
competition	منافسة - مسابقة	powerful	قوى
amazing	مدهش	rewarding	مجز - كافأ
behind	خلف	difficult	صعب
corridor	ممر	important	مهم
operation	عملية	engine	محرك - ماتور
pollution	تلوث	goal	هدف
production	انتاج - منتجات	archaeologist	عالم آثار
animal waste	فضلات الحيوانات	experience	خبرة
device	جهاز - وسيلة	uncertain	غير متأكد
local materials	مواد محلية	café	مقهى (مكان)
source	مصدر	coffee	قهوة (مشروب)
international	دولي	British	بريطاني
train station	محطة قطار	tool	أداة
sports shop	محل لبيع الأحذية	type	يكتب على الكمبيوتر
equipment	معدات	print	يطبع
less expensive	أقل غلواً	sports shoes	أحذية رياضية



★ Conjugation of verbs ★

Present	Meaning	Past	P.P
form	يشكل - يكون	formed	formed
allow	يسمح	allowed	allowed
collect	يجمع	collected	collected
produce	ينتج	produced	produced
interrupt	يقاطع	interrupted	interrupted
prevent	يمنع	prevented	prevented
type	يكتب على الكمبيوتر	typed	typed
print	يطبع	printed	printed
connect to	يتصل بـ	connected to	connected to
develop	يطور - ينمي	developed	developed
encourage	يشجع	encouraged	encouraged
check	يفصح	checked	checked

★ Prepositions ★

made of	مصنوع من	on the train	في القطار
form of	يشكل من	good at	جيد في

★ Words & Opposites ★

connect	يتصل	disconnect	يقطع الاتصال
certain	مؤكد	uncertain	غير متأكد
modern	حديث	old - ancient	قديم
usual	عادي	unusual	غير عادي

★ Definitions ★

Wi-Fi	: It allows mobiles to connect to internet (wireless fidelity)
smart phone	: A mobile working like a computer
e-book	: A book you can read online.
focus	: To give all your attention to something
laptop	: A small computer you can carry with you
expert	: It means having special skills in some thing.
essential	: It means very important



★ Listening Text ★

☞ Only students who are very good at maths and science can study at STEM Schools. They have to work hard when they get there. But spending time at the STEM school must be very rewarding. Today I have some students from STEM schools with me. They are going to tell us about amazing achievements. First of all, Azza is talking about an award she has won.

AZZA:

Hello! I won an award for a project that I did at my STEM school. First of all, our class studied the problems caused by polluted water around the world. People can't stay healthy if they have to drink polluted water. We studied plants and realized that some of them can clean dirty water. I asked myself could it be a way to solve the problem.

I developed an invention that cleans polluted water using only plants. I am sure this can help people living in places that don't have fresh water. After we check that the invention worked well, I entered the science competition in the USA.

I was very pleased to win an award. I think my invention might be important. Now, I want to take it around the world. There is a chance that it could help millions of people.

Language notes

ملاحظات لغوية

1- Only فقط

☞ Only students who are very smart can study at STEM Schools.

☞ The invention cleans polluted water using only plants.

2- take + obj. مفعول + around ينشئه - يتحول به

☞ I want to take my invention around the world.

3- have to + V. inf فعل مصدر (مضطر لـ) / must + V. inf فعل مصدر

☞ You have to study hard for the exam. (الدافع خارجي، الوالدين أو المعلم)

☞ You must study hard for the exam. (الدافع داخلي، من الشخص نفسه)

4-V. to be + going to + inf. مصدر الفعل (سوف)

☞ They are going to tell us about amazing achievements.

5-work well يـُـدَى بشكل جيد / do well يعمل بشكل جيد

☞ We check that the invention worked well.

☞ I did well in the previous exam.



Grammar

Making deductions

الاستنتاج

Expressing certainty and uncertainty

الاستنتاج في المضارع

must + inf

- تستخدم لعمل استنتاج مؤكد (100%)
- It is made of gold.
It **must cost** a lot of money.
 - You **must be** Hala's sister.
You look very similar!
 - I have told him great news.
He **must be** happy

Key words

- I'm sure ... is /are
- I'm certain. It's true.
- definitely / certainly

can't + inf

- تستخدم لعمل استنتاج مستبعد (نفي)
- It is made of plastic.
It **can't cost** a lot of money.
 - You **can't be** Hala's sister.
She travelled to the USA!
 - I have told him bad news.
He **can't be** happy.

Key words

- I'm sure ... isn't /aren't
- I'm certain. It isn't true.
- definitely / certainly

might + inf

- تستخدم لعمل استنتاج محتمل (غير مؤكد)
- If there is a lot of traffic.
He **might be** late.
 - She **might be** your aunt, but
I'm not sure.
 - I don't know. It **might be**
hot or windy.

Key words

- I'm not sure ../ may be
- I'm not certain./ perhaps
- I don't know/ possible

You will face it like that

- | | |
|--|-----------------------------------|
| ✂ I am sure she won't pass the exam. (can't) | ✂ She can't pass the exam. |
| ✂ Perhaps he will come early. (might) | ✂ He might come early. |
| ✂ I'm sure he is polite. (must) | ✂ He must be polite. |
| ✂ I'm sure he is a rich man. (must) | ✂ He must be a rich man. |
| ✂ Perhaps she is from Cairo. (might) | ✂ She might be from Cairo. |
| ✂ He must be tired. (I'm sure) | ✂ I'm sure he is tired. |
| ✂ I'm sure he isn't American. (can't) | ✂ He can't be American. |
| ✂ Perhaps I'll wear a jacket today. (might) | ✂ |
| ✂ Adel might visit us tomorrow. (I'm not sure) | ✂ |
| ✂ It is my pen. It's the only one that is red. (must) | ✂ |
| ✂ I'm sure it isn't a British coin. (can't) | ✂ |

الاستنتاج في الماضي

must have + P.P.

- تستخدم لعمل استنتاج مؤكد (100%)
- He **must have been** ill.
He was absent.
 - The floor was full of water.
She **must have forgotten**
closing the tap.

can't have + P.P.

- تستخدم لعمل استنتاج مستبعد (نفي)
- The street was dry. It **can't**
have rained.
 - The floor was full of water.
She **can't have closed** the
tap.

might have + P.P.

- تستخدم لعمل استنتاج محتمل (غير مؤكد)
- I didn't see Mona today. She
might have been absent.
 - He didn't find his books. He
might have forgotten them
at home.



1-Complete the following dialogue

Sara and Leila are at Sara's House.

Sara: Look at this photograph. It shows you at the beach when you were five ! (1)

Leila: No, I couldn't. My Sister Magda could swim because she was older. What could you do when you were five?

Sara : (2)

Leila : Tennis? That's difficult when you're small. Did you play tennis last weekend?

Sara: (3) I hurt my leg last week, so I needed to rest it.

Leila : (4) ?

Sara : Yes, I went to the hospital.

2- What do you say in the following situations :

1-You recommend going for a picnic.

.....

2-It's possible that Amer is absent. You didn't see him at the school.

.....

3- Your friend suggests going to the cinema but you are busy.

.....

4- Your friend asks you to recommend him a good story to read.

.....

5- Your brother suggesting watching the football match but you refuse.

.....

6- You give your friend advice to keep fit.

.....

7- Your friend is absent. Deduce the reason.

.....

8- The sky is cloudy and it's very cold. Guess what's going to be?

.....

9- You are not sure if you can pass the hard exam.

.....

10- Perhaps you will go to Marina's beaches on the holiday.

.....



3 - Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1- Wear a coat. It rain today.
a- might b- must c- can't d- mustn't
- 2- There is a lot of traffic today. We be late.
a- must b- should c- might d- won't
- 3- It be hot in the desert in summer.
a- might b- can't c- must d- mustn't
- 4- Ali be friends with Hassan. He doesn't know his name!
a- might b- must c- will d- can't
- 5- I have a new text. It ... be a message from my mother, but I'm not sure.
a- must b- mustn't c- can't d- might
- 6- This stamp be very old. We should ask an expert who can tell us for sure.
a- might b- must c- shouldn't d- can't
- 7- That book be good. Ahmed hasn't stopped reading it all day.
a- might b- can't c- must d- shouldn't
- 8- That be Ali in the street. He's gone away on holiday for two weeks.
a- must b- might c- can't d- mustn't
- 9- In this photo, everyone is wearing warm clothes. It very cold there.
a- might be b- can't be c- must be d- be
- 10- I'm not sure what the weather will be like. It hot or windy.
a- must be b- might be c- can't be d- will be
- 11- "Is this Nadia's bag?" "It Let's see if her books are in it."
a- might be b- must be c- will be d- can't be
- 12- You've been working very hard today, Mum. You tired.
a- be b- can't be c- must be d- might be
- 13- This Hassan's bicycle. He doesn't have one.
a- can't be b- will be c- might be d- must be
- 14- Hassan used his to find out what time the museum opened.
a- smart phone b- data c- wi-fi d- book
- 15- The students used the from the experiment to draw a graph.
a- book b- wi-fi c- smart phone d- data
- 16- We can use the internet in this cafe because it has-.....
a- wi-fi b- smart phone c- data d- book
- 17- My grandfather does not want a / an because he likes to buy new books from the bookshop.
a- smart phone b- data c- wi-fi d- e-book
- 18- school students usually understand new technology.
a- STEP b- STAND c- STEM d- TEAM
- 19- Omar won an / a for his amazing invention.
a- word b- work c- award d- way



20- Dina used the she collected to make a graph.

a- goal b- data c- future d-graph

21- TeachersSTEM students to enter competitions.

a- hit b- encourage c-visit d- stay

22- Please let me you a drink.

a- getting b- gets c- to get d- get

4-Read and correct the underlined words:

1-That must be Hassan's brother. He is working in London this week!

(.....)

2- The museum can't be closed. There are no lights on.

(.....)

3-You won first prize! You can't be very happy.

(.....)

4- We're not sure how old this coin is. It must be hundreds of years old.

(.....)

5-Shehab may be happy. He has just won a gold medal!

(.....)

6- Your father has a lot of work to do. He might been home late.

(.....)

7- The tourists're swimming in the sea. The water must be very cold.

(.....)

8- He can't be ill .He is at hospital.

(.....)

5- Rewrite the following using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:

1- Perhaps I'll wear a jacket today, I'm not sure. (might)

.....

2- Adel might visit us tomorrow. (I'm not sure)

.....

3- I know that it is my pen. It is the only one that is red. (must)

.....

4- I'm sure it isn't a British coin. (can't)

.....

5-1 Manal is at home. I can see lights on in her house. (must be)

.....

6- Ahmed will go to London. I'm not certain. (might)

.....

7- Salma might be at the club. (I'm not sure)

.....



8- I'm sure you will do well on your exam because you study very hard. (must)

9- He can't be Egyptian. (French)

10- He must be poor. (rich)

6- Read the following passage and answer the questions

Hesham is an active young man. He was born in a small village near Banha in 1980. He has been a farmer since he left school. He has learned a lot about farming from his friends and family but he's never been to university. He enjoys keeping domestic animals, such as buffaloes, goats, and sheep. He also keeps chicken for meat and eggs. He has always worked in the same way and hasn't changed the way he farms very much. He's never used a tractor to plough his land. He's only used animals.

1- What does Hesham enjoy doing?

2- What is the opposite of the underlined word?

3- What is the tractor used for?

4- The buffalo is one of the animals.

a- wild b- dangerous c- useless d- domestic

5- Hesham keeps for meat and eggs.

a- cows b- goats c- hens d- sheep

7- Write an email to your teacher about:

Explaining why you would like have a smart phone

- Your e-mail address is kamal@yahoo.com

- Your teacher's e-mail address is mrtarek@yahoo.com

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



Unit (4)



Test (1)



Unit (4)

① Supply the following dialogue:

Tamer and Lobna are talking about STEM schools.

Tamer : (1)

Lobna : It is short for science, technology, engineering and maths.

Tamer : Are there STEM schools in Egypt?

Lobna : (2)

Tamer : (3)

Lobna : No, the lessons are In English.

Tamer : Does it easy to find a job after you graduate?

Lobna : (4)

② What do you say in the following situations

1- You apologize for splitting a glass of water on your friend's jeans.

2- Your friend has a stomachache. Deduce the reason.

3- Your sister will buy you a present at your birthday. You are sure.

③ Read the following passage and answer the questions:

Students in Egyptian STEM schools are encouraged to try to solve essential problems like pollution and energy production. Abdel Rahman sharaf Eldeen and Mohamed Abd Elsalam, from 6 October STEM School, entered a competition in Italy in 2015.

Their project helps to produce energy from animal waste and prevent pollution. Noha Shoukry and Asmaa Atef, from El Maadi STEM School, invented a device that removes salt from water using high technology. *It* produces drinking water at a low price. Yasmine Yehia, from the same school, invented a device that uses local materials. It cleans polluted water and produces a source of energy. The three girls won prizes in a competition in the USA in 2015. The families of all these students must be very proud.

A) Answer the following questions:

1- Which students' had projects that help to solve pollution?

2-Where might Noha and Asmaa's invention be useful?

3-Do you think international competitions for students are important?
Why / Why not?



B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

4- What does the underlined word "device" mean?

- a- computer b- machine c- container d- technology

5 What does the underlined pronoun "it" refer to?

- a- salt b- technology c- water d- device

The Reader : Black Beauty

4 (a) Read and match:

A	B
1- John Manly	a- saved Squire Gordon from the broken bridge.
2- Black Beauty	b- hit the horses hard
3- Ginger	c- began to respect Squire Gordon
4- Merrylegs	d- was Squire Gordon's helper
	e- wanted to teach the boys a lesson about horses.

1-What made Black Beauty's journey with Squire and John difficult?

2-What happened at the bridge?

3- who started the fire at the stable?

4-Why do you think that John was able to take the horses from the burning stable?

5- Why do you think saving horses when there is a fire is very difficult?

5 Choose the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

1- The sky is clear today. It rain.

- a- must b- may c- can d- can't

2- Ali studies his lessons very well. He pass his exams.

- a- must b- may c- might d- can't

3- He have fallen off his bike. I am not sure.

- a- can b- must c- might d- can't

4- It is to take your passport when you go abroad.

- a- essential b- enormous c- enjoyable d- easy

5- My brother is collecting for his research بحث.

- a- date b- data c- dates d- drama

6- My new has a big screen and I can type on it easily.

- a- car b- taxi c- laptop d- motorbike



6 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) in brackets:

1- He looks happy he must have passed his exams. (can't)

2- We are sure that Maha come on time (must)

3- I have no idea if my father will buy me a new mobile . (might)

7 Write a paragraph of (7) sentences about :

" What's the technology going to do in the future?"

Unit (4)



Test (2)



Unit (4)

1 Supply the following dialogue

Adel is talking to Maher who's visiting Aswan.

Adel : (1)

Maher : For two weeks.

Adel : (2)

Maher : No, this is my second visit.

Adel : (3) Do you visit the High Dam?

Maher : Not yet, I'll (3)

Adel : Have great time.

Maher : (4)

2 What do you say in the following situations

1 – Your younger sister will enter a STEM school. You are sure.

3 – Your friend offer to help you at your new project.

2 –Summarise an essay in one or two sentences.



3 Read the following passage and answer the questions:

You have heard of the writer, Daniel Defoe, haven't you? One of my favourite two novels by Daniel Defoe is a book called Robinson Crusoe. It is about a boy who wants to become a sailor. When he grows up, he travels to many countries and has many adventures. His boat sinks and he lives for many years on an island. I liked the description of how he finds food and a place to live. Finally, Crusoe meets some other people and returns to England. Some of the story made me feel sad, but at the end I felt happy. It was a very enjoyable story and the characters are wonderful.

A) Answer the following questions :

1- How did the writer feel at the end of the story?

.....

2- What's the writer's favourite book?

.....

3 – What kind of stories do you think "Robinson Crusoe" was?

.....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

4- The main character in the story wants to be a

a- writer b- sailor c- doctor d- dentist

5- Robinson Crusoe returned to at the end.

a- England b- Sweden c- Egypt d- USA

The Reader : Black Beauty

4 (a) Read and match:

(A)	(B)
1 – The wood was	a – softly with Beauty
2 – John spoke	b – dark
3 – When Beauty arrived home,	c – were fed and brushed
4 – Ginger and Beauty	d – he was very tired
	e – light

B – Answer the following questions

1- Do you think that the firemen came late? Why? Why not?

.....

2- What did Beauty feel when they started crossing the bridge?

.....

3- Where did Squire's friends live?

.....

4- What would happen if Beauty continued crossing the bridge?

.....

5- What was the young rider doing when his horse was brushed?

.....





Unit (5)

Achievements

Lessons 1&2

★ Vocabulary ★

achievement	إنجاز
newspaper	جريدة
article	مقالة
genius	عبقري
developed	متقدم - متطور
development	تطوير - نمو
brain	عقل - مخ
developed brain	عقل منفتح
computer programming	برمجة الكمبيوتر
system	نظام
intelligent	ذكي - بارع
software	برامج الحاسوب
skill	مهارة
ability	قدرة
sum	مسألة حسابية
maths	رياضيات
award	مكافأة - جائزة
yet	حتى الآن - بعد
only	فقط
able to	قادر على
however	مع ذلك
TV channel	قناة تلفزيونية
American University	الجامعة الأمريكية
improvement	تقدم - تحسين
high level	مستوى عالى
walk past	يمر ماشياً
business	عمل
several	متنوع - متعدد
graduate	خريج - يتخرج
degree	شهادة - درجة

yourself	نفسك
quickly	بسرعة
slowly	ببطء
fire	نار - حريق
firefighters	رجال الإطفاء
chess	لعبة الشطرنج
amazing brain	عقل مذهل
greatest	أعظم
parents	والدين
special	خاص
competition	منافسة - مسابقة
result	نتيجة
Imhotep	امحتوب
expression	تعبير - لفظ
furthermore	علاوة على ذلك
in addition	بالإضافة إلى
as well as	أيضاً
give answers	يعطي إجابات
take a rest	يأخذ راحة - يستريح
trophy	إكليل - كأس مسابقة
do a sum	يقوم بعملية حسابية
at the age of ..	في عمر ...
swimmer	سباح
private lessons	دروس خصوصية
get a medal	يحصل على ميدالية
the internet	الانترنت
athlete	رياضي
during	أثناء
tourism	السياحة
race	سباق



★ Conjugation of verbs ★

Present	Meaning	Past	P.P
achieve	يحقّق - ينجز	achieved	achieved
invite	يدعو	invited	invited
show	يعرض - عرض	showed	showed
improve	يحسن - يطور	improved	improved
graduate	يتخرج	graduated	graduated
put out	يطفئ - يخمّد	put out	put out
count	يعدّ - يحسب	counted	counted
memorise	يحفظ	memorised	memorised
revise	يراجع	revised	revised
learn	يتعلم	learned/ learnt	learned/ learnt
work out	يحلّ - يستنبط	worked out	worked out
decide to	يقرر أن	decided to	decided to
discover	يكشف	discovered	discovered
speak	يتحدّث	spoke	spoken
hear	يسمع	heard	heard
repair	يصلح	repaired	repaired

★ Prepositions ★

hear about	يسمع عن	on shows	يظهر في برامج حوارية
teach ... about	يعلم/يدرس عن	decide to + inf.	يقرر أن ..
a genius at + (v.ing/n)	عبقري في ..	at the university	في الجامعة
able to + inf.	قادر على ..	at a high level	على مستوى عالي

★ Words & Opposites ★

possible	ممكّن	impossible	مستحيل
ability	قدرة	inability	عجز - قصور
newest	الاحدث/الاجدد	oldest	الاقدم
ordinary	عادي	extraordinary	خارق
better than	افضل من ..	worse than	اسوء من ..
software	برامج الحاسوب	hardware	أجزاء الحاسوب
polite	مؤدّب	impolite	غير مؤدّب
lazy	كسول	active	نشيط



★ Definitions ★

genius	: A person with a very highly developed brain.
intelligent	: Very quick to learn and understand.
skill	: An ability to do something.
sum	: Maths problem to work out.
award	: A prize given for an achievement
software	: The different systems used by a computer
computer programming	: Writing the systems that make a computer work.

★ Mahmoud Wael : A child genius ★

Six-year-old Abla Wael from Cairo couldn't do her maths homework one evening. Her father was helping her when her younger brother came into the room. Mahmoud couldn't speak very well yet because he was only three. However, he was able to give all the answers to the sums.

Mahmoud's father was sure that his son was a genius. Soon, TV channels heard about his amazing maths skills and invited him to be on their shows.

When Mahmoud was seven, the American University in Cairo helped him to improve his English because it would help him to study maths at a high level. After only three months, he could read, write and speak English quite well.

One day, Mahmoud walked past a class that was studying computer programming at the university and he could understand the lesson. Soon one of the biggest computer software business in the world became interested in Mahmoud because he was so intelligent. He studied computer programming and got several awards. He was then able to teach university graduates about computer programming. He was only eleven!

Universities around the world invited Mahmoud to start a degree, but he decided to finish school first. He said that he would like to go to university in Egypt.

An Award to

I would like to give my mother an award because she is the best mother in the world. Because she looked after me and my brother and sister, she wasn't able to go to university when she was younger. However, she started studying online two years ago and she has done very well in her exams. She wants to become a teacher one day and teaches young children.

She should get an award because she has shown us that it is possible both to be a good parent and to achieve things for yourself.



Language notes

ملاحظات لغوية

1- six-year-old (صفة لاسم - معناها ذو الست أعوام) لا نضع معها s

✂ A six-year-old girl saved her family. ✂ Hamdy is six years old.

2- Canal قناة / قناه أو ترعه تلفزيونية Channel

✂ The Suez Canal is very important. ✂ We watched the film on channel.

3- invite يدعو / invent يخترع

✂ Ali invited all his friends and relatives for his birthday party.

✂ Addison invented the electric lamp.

4- to + inf. (من أجل ..) / for + v.ing (لكي) فعل مصدر

✂ Mona went to university in America to learn English.

✂ An athlete gets a medal for winning a race.

5-[decide to/ would like to / invite to / (be) able to] + Inf. فعل مصدر

✂ I have decided to work hard this year. ✂ I would like to drink tea.

✂ She invites me to her wedding. ✂ I was able to ride a bike alone.

6- quiet هادي / quite تماما - الى حد ما

✂ The weather is quite hot. تستخدم كظرف ويأتي بعدها صفة

✂ The class becomes quiet when the teacher enters it. تستخدم كصفة

7- ... but ... ولكن ... However, ... رغم ذلك =

✂ He was only three. However, he was able to answer all the sums.

✂ He was only three but he was able to answer all the sums.

8- (V. to be / become) + interested in = be keen on = be fond of مهتم - شغوف بـ

✂ He became interested in computer games.

✂ He was keen on English. ✂ He was fond of new software.

9- graduate from / a graduate خريج جامعة / يتخرج من

✂ He graduated from Cairo University. (Verb)

✂ He is a graduate of Tanta University. (Noun)

10- start [V.ing / noun] يبدأ ...

✂ She started studying online two years ago.

✂ He started a degree at a university in France.

11- On (TV - the internet - the radio - the mobile ... etc)

✂ I watched the program on TV last night.

✂ I listened to the lesson on the radio.

12- improve يبرهن - يثبت / prove يحسن - يطور

✂ He studies hard to improve his English skills.

✂ He proved that there is nothing impossible.

13- At the age of / When he was .. في عمر أو في سن

✂ At the age of thirty, she was able to start her own business.

✂ When she was thirty, she was able to start her own business.

14- help + (يساعد في) الشيء + with + مفعول (يساعد .. لكي) مصدر + to + مفعول

✂ The university helped him to study maths. (يساعد .. لكي ..)

✂ He helped his sister with her homework. (يساعد .. في ...)



Language Functions

الوظائف اللغوية

- Adding information

إضافة معلومات

- ✂ Injy revises her lessons well. **Furthermore**, she does all her homework.
- ✂ **In addition to** doing his homework, Youssef helps his mother.
- ✂ I could play tennis when was ten. **In addition**, I could use the internet.

Study the following

1-In addition to + (v.ing / noun) بالاضافة الى

تستخدم في بداية الجملة الأولى ، ويأتي بعدها أما (V.ing) - أو (اسم):

- ✂ **In addition to having** spaghetti. We're going to have meat.

2- In addition, (جملة) بالاضافة

تستخدم في بداية الجملة الثانية ونضع بعدها فاصلة:

- ✂ We're going to have spaghetti. **In addition**, we are going have meat.

3- Furthermore, (جملة) ... علاوة على ذلك

تأتي في بداية الجملة الثانية ، ونضع بعدها فاصلة :

- ✂ We're going to have spaghetti. **Furthermore**, we are going have meat.

4- as well .. (أيضاً)

تستخدم في نهاية الجملة الثانية بمعنى (أيضاً)

- ✂ We're going to have spaghetti. We are going have meat **as well**.

5- as well as

تستخدم بعد الفاعل الأول ، ويتفق الفعل مع الفاعل الأول :

- ✂ They, **as well as** he, are happy. ✂ I, **as well as** they, am tired.
- ✂ He, **as well as** we, has a science lesson.

جمع الكلمات الشاذة

- معظم كلمات اللغة الإنجليزية تجمع بإضافة (s) في آخرها :

- boy - boys / girl - girls / apple - apples / farm - farms / lion - lions

- إذا انتهت الكلمة بـ o, x, ch, sh, ch, ss, s يضاف (es) في آخرها

- watch - watches / bus - buses / fox - foxes / kiss - kisses

- إذا انتهت بحرف (y) يسبقه ساكن - تحذف الـ y ونضع (ies) في آخر الكلمة :

- butterfly - butterflies / trophy - trophies / puppy - puppies

- لكل قاعدة شواذ (تحفظ كما هي):

- child- children / mouse - mice / ox - oxen / person - people /

- man - men / sheep - sheep / fish - fish



1-Complete the following dialogue

Sara and Leila are talking about Sara's photo in the past.

Sara : Look at this photograph. It shows you at the beach when you were five! (1)

Leila : No, I couldn't. My sister Magda could swim because she was older. What could you do when you were five?

Sara : (2)

Leila : Tennis? That's difficult when you're small. Did you play tennis last weekend?

Sara : (3) I hurt my leg last week, so I needed to rest it.

Leila : (4) ?

Sara : Of course. When I recovered, I'll learn you how to play tennis.

2- Write what would you say in each of the following situations:

1- Someone asks you what you have done in addition to running.

.....

2- Your friend wants to know if you would like to eat salty fish or not.

.....

3- A waiter asks you what you would like to start with as a dessert.

.....

4- Mother asks you what you will take with you in addition to your bag.

.....

3- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1- He is because he is a person with a very highly developed brain .

a- genius b- stupid c- foolish d- ugly

2- Computer.... is the writing of the systems that make a computer work.

a- case b- programming c- mouse d- screen

3- She is because she is very quick to learn and understand things.

a- lazy b- foolish c- intelligent d- sleepy

4- is a term of different programmes used to operate a computer.

a-shareware b- software c- freeware d- liteware

5- is the ability of someone.

a- Fill b- Cell c- Skill d- kill

6- To is to work out maths problem.

a- sum b- run c- sun d- cut

7- He got a for his achievement in science.

a- brochure b- award c- word d- forward



8- The scientist won a/anfor discovering a new medicine.

a- bag b-table c- award d- trophy

9- First, Nahla got in medicine, then she got a job in the hospital.

a- degree b- paper c- newspaper d- wordrobe

10- The basketball team won a gold..... for winning the competition.

a- plane b- trophy c- plan d- pen

11- My cousin is very good at speaking English.,he speaks French.

a- In addition to b- Furthermore c- Addition to d- As well

12- reading after dinner, I write emails to friends.

a- In addition to b- Furthermore c- In Addition d- As well

13- We're going to paint the room.,we're going to get new furniture.

a- In addition to b- As well as c- In Addition d- As well

14-..... being a great player, Ramadan Sobhi scores amazing goals.

a- In addition to b- As well as c- In Addition d- As well

15- Mr Amin is a great teacher , he never gives private lessons.

a- In addition to b- Furthermore c- Addition to d- As well

16- She is polite being beautiful.

a- in additionto b- furthermore c- in addition d- addition

17- My sister is very polite.she is very active.

a-Not more b- Furthermore c- In addition to d- as well

17- My father always goes to work on time he does his work well.

a- In addition to b- As well as c- In Addition d- As well

18- In addition to..... every day, he never smoke.

a-exercise b- exercised c- exercising d- exercise

19- My brother is going to study computer at university.

a - programming b- graph c-homework d- mill

20- Ali has a very good computer, with the newest on it.

a-trophy b- software c- skill d-school

4- Read and correct the underlined words:

1- Our cycling team always practises at the weekend. In addition to, we practise four times a week in the holiday. (.....)

2- Ahmed likes playing speed-ball. However, he enjoys playing football. (.....)

3- In addition the soup, he had some sandwiches. (.....)

4- He is lazy. He has a developed brain. (.....)

5- Samy went to university in America to learning English. (.....)

6- Ali a ten -years-old boy can do many good things. (.....)



- 7- Mona invented all her friends to attend her sister's wedding party. (.....)
- 8- What do you like read? (.....)
- 9- An oxen is very strong. (.....)
- 10- Mothers always look for their young children carefully. (.....)

5- Rewrite the following using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:

- 1- Hassan is interested in reading. He also writes short stories. (in addition)
- 2- Nadia made soup. She also made rice for lunch. (In addition to...)
- 3- Tarek is very good at tennis. He's good at basketball, too. (Furthermore)
- 4- I did my homework. I helped my mother as well. (Furthermore)
- 5- In addition to going to the market, he went to the club. (in addition)
- 6- I went to the market and bought some fruits. (In addition to...)
- 7- Tarek is very good at tennis. He's good at basketball, too. (Furthermore)
- 8- He has finished his math's homework. He's finished his English homework. (as well)

6- Read the following, then answer the questions :

Many famous people were amazing when they were children. Mozart was able to play music when he was three and could write music when he was five. Judit Polgar is a great chess player. She was able to win chess games against some adults when she was twelve years old and she won chess competitions when she was fifteen. Karl Benz went to university to study to be an engineer when he was fifteen and he later invented the car. And the great scientist Marie Curie taught herself to read Russian and French when she was four. She could also help her older brothers and sisters with their maths homework! However, some people who do amazing things, when they are children become ordinary adults: not all of them are able to become famous.

[illegible]



Unit (5)

Achievements

Lessons 3&4

★ Vocabulary ★

trophy	كأس - نصب تذكاري	swimmer	سباح
athlete	لاعب رياضي	correctly	بطريقة صحيحة
medal	ميدالية	nurse	ممرضة
race	سباق	cycling	ركوب الدراجات
complete	يكمل	practise	يمارس - يتمرن
university course	منهج جامعي	practice	ممارسة - تمرين
a sports team	فريق رياضي	ordinary	عادي
good results	نتائج جيدة	Olympic athlete	بطل أولمبي
family	عائلة	far from	بعيد عن
city	مدينة	drops	قطرات
village	قرية	test	اختبار
get an award	يحصل على مكافأة	furniture	أثاث منزلي
what kind of	ما نوع ...؟	score goals	يسجل أهداف
beach	شاطئ	French	اللغة الفرنسية
look after	يعتني بـ	France	فرنسا
possible	ممكن	cousin	ابن أو بنت العم/الخال
both	كلاهما	great	عظيم
mouse	فأر	plan	خطة
mice	فئران	get a job	يحصل على وظيفة
during	أثناء	get a medal	يحصل على ميدالية
football match	مباراة كرة قدم	research	بحث
person	شخص	scientist	عالم
people	ناس	medicine	دواء
newest	الأحدث	amazing	مدهش
wardrobe	دولاب - حجرة ملابس	system	نظام
repair	يصلح	able to	قادر على
tour guide	مرشد سياحي	firefighters	رجال الأطفاء
tourism	سياحة	brain	مخ
excellent	ممتاز - رائع	result	نتيجة



★ Conjugation of verbs ★

Present	Meaning	Past	P.P
spell	يتهجى	spelt	spelt
get	يحصل على	got	gotten
repair	يصلح	repaired	repaired
memorise	يتذكر	memorised	memorised
include	يتضمن - يشمل	included	included
came into	يدخل	come into	came into
score	يسجل - يحرز	scored	scored
decide to	يقرر أن	decided to	decided to
reward	يكافئ	rewarded	rewarded

★ Prepositions ★

on time	في الوقت المحدد	in the blue shirt	يرتدي القميص الأزرق
in time	في الوقت المناسب	want to + inf	يريد أن ..
at the end of	في نهاية ..	have interview with	يجري مقابلة مع
at a high level	على مستوى عالي	at the concert	في الحفلة الموسيقية
in addition to + V.ing	بالإضافة إلى ..	in the world	في العالم
on shows	يظهر في برامج	in his twenties	في العشرينات من عمره
arrive in + مكان كبير	يصل إلى ..	arrive at + مكان صغير	يصل إلى

★ Words & Opposites ★

ability	قدرة	inability	عدم القدرة - العجز
possible	ممكن	impossible	مستحيل
newest	الاجدد	oldest	الاقدم
polite	مؤدب	impolite	غير مؤدب - وقح
active	نشط	lazy	كسول

★ Definitions ★

award	: A prize given for an achievement .
degree	: A qualification given to someone who finished the course.
medal	: A round piece of metal given as a prize to someone who won.
trophy	: A prize for winning a competition (a silver cup).



★ Listening Text ★

Tarek : Did you watch the program on TV last night, Hassan? It was about some very intelligent children.

Hassan : No, I didn't. Tell me about it.

Tarek : Well, One of them, a boy from India became a doctor at the age of 7.

Hassan : Really! He must be a genius.

Tarek : Yes, he is. His parents knew there was something special about him. When he was very young, he could walk and talk before the age of one and he could also read very difficult books when he was only five. He became both the youngest doctor in India and the youngest boy to study medicine at university, he was twelve.

Hassan : That's amazing. What is he doing now?

Tarek : He is in his twenties now and he is still working as a doctor. Then, the TV program had an interview with a young girl from India. When she was eleven, she was the youngest person in a math competition. Not only did she win the competition, but she achieved amazing result, 100%.

Hassan : Wow, she is either a genius or she worked very hard at school.

Tarek : I am sure she is a genius. I work hard at school, too but I am not as good as she is.

Language notes

ملاحظات لغوية

1- Not only + فعل مساعد + فاعل + فعل but also ... (ليس فقط ... ولكن أيضاً)

✎ Not only did she win, but she also got a hundred.

2 - either Or (إما----- أو) / neither nor (لا-----ولا)

✎ She is either a doctor or an engineer.

✎ He is neither at home nor at school.

3 - decide to + inf. / decide that + جملة كاملة فعل مصدر

✎ He decided to finish school first.

✎ He decided that he would go abroad.

4- so + صفة = very (جداً) / too + صفة (جداً أكثر من اللازم)

✎ Mahmoud was so intelligent.

✎ It's too heavy. I can't carry it.

5 - get/win an award يحصل على جائزة

✎ He got an award for his work.

6 - teach about يعلم - يدرس

✎ He can teach them about computer programming.



Grammar

Ability or inability

القدرة أو العجز

Ability or inability in the past

القدرة وعدم القدرة في الماضي

1

وجه علم

وقت مصدر

Ability

could + inf.

- I **could swim** when I was six.
- Amr **could play** tennis.
- They **could use** the internet.

was / were (able to) + inf. فعل مصدر

- I **was able to swim** across the Nile River.
- He **was able to put** it out very quickly.
- They **were able to** type fast on keyboard.

2

Inability

couldn't + inf.

- She **couldn't do** her homework.
- He **couldn't read**.
- They **couldn't write**.

wasn't / weren't (able to) + inf. فعل مصدر

- She **wasn't able to answer** all the sums.
- He **wasn't able to read** the address.
- They **weren't able to write** the e-mails.

ملحوظات هامة

- تأتي (Could) ، (was/were) في أول السؤال بمعنى (هل ؟)، وفعل مساعد بعد كلمة الاستفهام:

- What **were you able to see** at the concert? - I was able to see the soloist.
- What **could you play** when you were six? - I could play chess.

- تحول (Were you) في السؤال - إلي (I was) في الإجابة :

- Were you able to do the homework? - Yes, I **was**. - No, I **wasn't**.
- Could you read when you were six? - Yes, I **could**. - No, I **couldn't**.

- لاحظ أن : (managed to + مصدر) - (succeeded in + V.ing) تعبر عن القدرة في الماضي

- He **managed to solve** all the quizzes. He **succeeded in solving** all the quizzes.

- إذا كان التعبير عن القدرة في المضارع نستخدم (can) أو (am/is/are + able to):

- I **can do** my homework alone. I'm **able to do** well in the exam.
- He **can play** football. He's **able to score** goals in the match.
- They **can run** fast. They're **able to win** the race.

مضارع	ماضي
(am/is/are) capable of + V + ing	- (was/were) capable of + V + ing
(have/ has) the ability to + مصدر	- had the ability to + مصدر

- He **is capable of solving** the mystery. He **was capable of doing** the sums.
- He **has the ability to solve** the mystery. He **had the ability to do** the sums.

You will face it like that

- Mona wasn't able to finish the project yesterday. (could)
- Mona **couldn't** finish the project yesterday.
- Could you write stories when you were young? (Were)
- **Were you able to** write stories when you were young?
- Were you able to do the sums? (ability)
- **Had you the ability to** do the sums?
- The laptop enabled me to type fast. (able)
- I **was able to** type fast by using the laptop
- Were you able to run to the club at noon yesterday? (Could ...?)
- **Could you run** to the club at noon yesterday?



1-Complete the following dialogue

Nabil is at the doctor's.

Nabil : Please, help me, doctor.

Doctor : What (1)

Nabil : I have a terrible pain in my chest and I can't breathe.

Doctor : Let me examine you. (2)

Nabil : (3)....., doctor. I have been smoking for a long time.

Doctor : My advice is (4) because
medicine alone will have no effect.

Nabil : Ok, doctor. Thank you.

2- What do you say in the following situations :

1- Someone asks you what you have done in addition to running.

.....

2-It's possible that Mona is go out. You didn't see her at the home.

.....

3- Your friend suggests going to the park but you suggest another place.

.....

4- Your friend asks you to recommend him a good novel to read.

.....

5- Your friend wants to know if you would like to eat salty fish or not.

.....

6- You give your friend an advice to be good at English.

.....

7- Your friend is ill. Deduce the reason.

.....

8- The sky is cloudy and it's very cold. Guess what's it going to be?

.....

9- Dad asks you what you want to take with you in addition to your bag.

.....

10- A waiter asks you what you would like to start with as a dessert.

.....

11- Tell your friend that your sister was able to read when she was five.

.....

12-Your brother could swim but he couldn't dive. Tell your friend.

.....



3 - Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1-The maths homework was very difficult. Were you do it?

- a- could b- able to c- able d- can

2-you speak English when you were six?

- a- Were b- Do c- Able d- Could

3-you able to speak to the teacher today about the homework?

- a- Were b- Did c- Was d- Could

4- When you were ten, you stand on one leg?

- a- were b- are c- was d- could

5- She wasn't go to university when she was younger.

- a- could b- able to c- able d- can

6- I walk until I was 18 months old.

- a- weren't b- aren't c- wasn't d- couldn't

7- you speak two languages when you were five?

- a- Were b- Did c- Was d- Could

8- Now, I can speak English, but I speak it when I was young.

- a- can b- could c- able to d- able

9- When I was ten, I write short stories.

- a- am able to b- was able to c- is able to d- able to

10-How old was the girl when she won the?

- a- ability b- completion c- competition d- question

11- An athlete getsa for winning a race.

- a- medal b- paper c- desk d- play

12- A student gets a for completing a university course.

- a- referee b- free c- agree d- degree

13- A sports team might win a at the end of a competition.

- a- trophy b- e-mail c- place d- wi-fi

14- A student gets a/ an for good results.

- a-word b- bus c- award d- canal

15- My mother looked me and my brother and sister.

- a- at b- after c- up d- down

16- How quickly can you work out the answers to these maths?

- a- sums b- suns c- cups d- buns

17- A is someone who is very intelligent.

- a- baby b- river c- cat d- genus

18- The player showed amazing during the football match.

- a- homework b- programming c- graph d- skills

19- My brother is going to study computer at university.

- a - programming b- graph c-homework d- mill

20- Ali has a very good computer, with the newest on it.

- a-trophy b- software c- skill d- school



4-Read and correct the underlined words:

- 1- He could reading when he was three. (.....)
- 2- She wasn't able to coming to university yesterday because she was ill. (.....)
- 3- Geniuses couldn't do things that ordinary people find difficult. (.....)
- 4- Olympic athletes get degrees when they win first place. (.....)
- 5- Can you see these mouse? (.....)
- 6- Look at those child in the blue shirts. (.....)
- 7- When he was six, he can speak two languages. (.....)
- 8- What is she able to do when she was ten? (.....)
- 9- They were able in complete the race. (.....)
- 10- Osama didn't able to get the prize. (.....)
- 11- Leila could read when she was two. She is a graduate. (.....)

5- Rewrite the following using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:

- 1- I couldn't find the pen that you lost. (able)
.....
- 2- Mona wasn't able to finish the project yesterday. (could)
.....
- 3- Could you write stories when you were young? (Were)
.....
- 4- Amany could draw some nice pictures last week. (able)
.....
- 5- Were you able to run to the club at noon yesterday? (could)
.....
- 6- A man bought them some sweets. (Two)
.....
- 7- Knives areb used to cut things. (for)
.....
- 8- Were you able to do the sums? (ability)
.....
- 9- There is a mouse under the table. (mice)
.....
- 10- They cooked lunch. They watched TV. (Not only)
.....
- 11- In addition to studying hard, he plays football. (In addition)
.....



12- He managed to solve all the quizzes. (able to)

13- She was capable of crossing the bridge. (able)

14- Was he able to solve the mystery? (capable)

15- I wasn't able to find the pen that you lost. (couldn't)

16- When he was four, he had the ability to read and write. (could)

17- She didn't have the ability to run when she was two. (couldn't)

6- Read the following passage and answer the questions

I would like to give my mother award because she is the best mother in the world, because she looked after me and my brother and sister, she wasn't able to go to university when she was younger. However, she started studying online two years ago and she has done very well in her exams. She wants to become a teacher one day and teach young children. She should get an award because she has shown us that it is possible both to be a good parent and to achieve things for yourself.

A) Answer the following questions:

1- Why is the writer's mother the best mother in the world?

2- Was she able to go to university when she was younger

3- What does she want to be?

B) Choose the correct answer:

4- She started studying using

a- the internet b- the cinema c- the radio d- the cassette

5- She should get an /a

a- e-book b- award c- library d- experiment



Unit (5)



Test (1)



Unit (5)

① Supply the following dialogue:

Aya : Which job would you like to do when you grow up?

Alaa : (1)

Aya : A doctor ! (2)

Alaa : Because I want to help people who are ill.

Aya : Are you going to work in the city or the countryside?

Alaa : (3)

Aya : Why do you want to work in the countryside?

Alaa : (4)

② What do you say in the following situations

1- You advise your friend not to smoke.

2- You ask your brother to open the door.

3- You suggest playing football.

③ Read the following passage and answer the questions:

Samir lived with his parents until he was twenty four years old, and then he got a job in an office of a big factory in another town, so he left home. He found a little flat and lived there on his own. At first he cleaned it himself, but after a few weeks he asked Mrs. Leila to help him. She promised to come to clean his flat for an hour ever morning. After she had been working for Samir for two weeks, one evening, he looked at the mirror in his bedroom and thought, "That mirror looks very dusty. Mrs. Leila's forgotten to clean it. I can write on the dust with my finger!" "I cough whenever I breathe because everything in this room is dusty".

A) Answer the following questions:

1- Why did Samir leave his parents' home?

2- What caused Samir to cough?

3- What did the underlined word refer to?

4- Mrs Leila promised to work for every morning.

a- an hour

b- two weeks

c- two years

d- a month

5- Samir wrote on the mirror with his

a- chalk

b- pen

c- hand

d- finger



The Reader : Black Beauty

4 (a) Read and match:

A	B
1- Gordon's friend	a) didn't listen to Beauty when she called out.
2- The young rider	b) walked out of the stable when Beauty called out.
3- Ginger	c) smoked a cigarette and caused a fire.
4- Mrs. Gordon	d) was amazed because John saved the horses.
	e) went with Squire Gordon to visit some friends.

1-Who did Squire Gordon and his wife decide to visit?

2-Where did they stop after 35 kilometres?

3- Who tried to take the horses outside?

4-Why did the building collapse ?

5- How did Squire Gordon's friend praise John?

5 Choose the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

1- My granddaughter walk some steps last night

a- was able to b- could c- can d- can't

2-When Amal was 6 years old, she read and write English.

a- was able to b- could c- can d- can't

3- In playing football, he plays music very well.

a- addition to b- addition c- furthermore d- edition

4- Who won Nobel for chemistry from Egypt?

a- reward b- trophy c- prize d- medal

5- I think some occupations such as carpentry need some

a- skillful b- skilled c- clever d- skills

6- Computer can do quickly and accurately.

a- some b- sun c- sums d- sons

6 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) in brackets:

1- Ahmed couldn't lift the box because he was ill. (able)

2-She did her homework and helped her mother. (In addition to)

3- Although Mohammed came late , he was allowed to enter the lecture. (However)



7 Write a paragraph of (7) sentences about :

" Someone you know who is a genius "

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Unit (5)



Test (2)



Unit (5)

1 Supply the following dialogue

Tarek : Did you watch the program on TV last night, Hassan?

Hassan : No, I didn't. (1)

Tarek : There was a boy from India became a doctor at the age of 7.

Hassan : Really! He must (2)

Tarek : Yes, he is. He became both the youngest doctor in India and the youngest boy to study medicine at university, he was twelve.

Hassan : That's amazing. (3) ?

Tarek : He is in his twenties now and he is still working as a doctor.

Hassan : Wow, (4)?

Tarek : I am sure he is a genius. I work hard at school, too but I am not as good as he is.

2 What do you say in the following situations

1 –You suggest doing a science quiz.

.....

2 – Someone has helped you.

.....

3 – You tell your friend about your ability in the past.

.....



3 Read the following passage and answer the questions:

An old man and a young man were walking through a forest. They saw a bear in front of them. The young man ran to a tree and climbed it quickly. His friend tried to climb one too, but he couldn't. He didn't know what to do. He thought for a moment then lay down on the ground and didn't move. Bears don't eat dead bodies. The bear came to him and smelt him. It smelt his arms, face and legs.

After two or three minutes, the bear went away. The young man came down from the tree. The old man stood up. "The bear seemed to say something to you," The young man said. His friend said, "Yes, it told me to look for a better friend..!!"

A) Answer the following questions:

1 – Where did the two men see the bear?

.....

2 – What did the bear advise the old man to do?

.....

3 – What does the underlined word " it" refer to?

.....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

4 – The man ran to a tree and climbed it.

a – old b – young c – small d – big

5 – The old man stood up

a- after the bear had gone away.

b- before the bear went away.

c- when the bear was smelling his body.

d- When his friend was climbing the tree.

The Reader : Black Beauty

4 (a) Read and match:

(A)	(B)
1. John thanked the man	a. they would fall into the river
2. Gordon thanked Beauty	b. because he told them about the bridge
3. Black beauty felt pleased	c. because he saved them
4. If they crossed the bridge	d. when he saw the gates of Birtwick Park
	e. they would fall into the sea.



B – Answer the following questions

1 – Why was Black Beauty pleased to be home?

.....

2 – What did Gordon and his wife decide to do?

.....

3 – How far was it to Gordon friends' home?

.....

4 – Who were pulling the carriage?

.....

5 – What was the young rider doing?

.....

5 Choose the correct answer from a,b,c or d

1. My father always goes to work on time. ,he does work well.

a. In addition b. In addition to c. because of d. due to

2. He in answering all the questions.

a. managed b. succeeded c. was able d. was capable

16. Which of the sums in the maths test you to do?

a. wasn't able b. couldn't c. weren't able d. could

1. A person with a very highly developed brain is a

a. lazy b. stupid c. genius d. penguin

9. A sports team gets a at the end of a competition.

a - trophy b. shot c. gun d. book

12. The play showed amazing..... during the match.

a. skills b. laziness c. helpless d. dreams

6 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) in brackets .

1 – Was the detective able to solve the crime? (capable)

.....

2- She cooked lunch. She watched TV. (Not only)

.....

3 – I wasn't able to find the pen that you lost. (couldn't)

.....

7 Write a paragraph of (7) sentences about :

"Your goals in life in your twenties"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



Unit (6)

Inventors

Lessons 1&2

★ Vocabulary ★

invention	اختراع
inventor	مخترع
machine	آلة - ماكينة
robot	إنسان آلي
below	اسفل - أدنى
scientific	علمي
a long time	مدة طويلة
under water	تحت الماء
study the sea	يدرس البحر
others	آخرون
volcanoes	براكين
dangerous	خطير
planet	كوكب
plant	نبات
plane	طائرة
plan	خطة
soil	تربة
gases	غازات
personal	شخصي
vacuum cleaner	مكنسة كهربائية
clean floor	ينظف الأرضية
lawn mowers	جرازة حشائش
cut the grass	يقص حشائش
park	منتزه
garden	حديقة
say hello	يرحب
voice	صوت انسان
sound	صوت شيء
baby	طفل رضيع

useful	نافع - مفيد
feel better	يشعر بتحسن
entertain	يستمتع
space	فضاء
conversation	محادثة
similar	متشابه
skill	مهارة
skillfully	بمهارة
types	نماذج - أنواع
special types	نماذج خاصة
problems	مشاكل
environment	بيئة
poster	ملصق
in order to	لكي
idea	فكرة
project	مشروع
experiment	تجربة
necessary	ضروري
test	اختبار
completely	تماماً
winner	فائز
science museum	متحف علوم
character	شخصية
grammar	قواعد نحوية
spelling	استهزاء
grammar rules	قواعد نحوية
nervous	عصبي
smoke	دخان - يدخن
hot days	أيام حارة



★ Conjugation of verbs ★

Present	Meaning	Past	P.P
invent	يخترع	invented	invented
design	يصمم	designed	designed
include	يتضمن - يشمل	included	included
remind	يذكر	reminded	reminded
emphasise	يؤكد	emphasised	emphasised
receive	يستقبل	received	received
turn	يدير - يلف - يحول	turned	turned
recognise	يتعرف على	recognized	recognized
read	يقرأ	read	read

★ Prepositions ★

design to	يصمم لـ	in order to + inf	بغرض - لكي
similar to	مشابه لـ	remind + مفعول + to + inf.	يذكر .. بـ
belong to + مفعول	يخص - ينتمى إلى	arrive in	يصل لمكان كبير
on hot days	في أيام حارة	arrive at	يصل لمكان صغير
under water	تحت الماء	reach	يصل

★ Words & Opposites ★

ask	يسأل	answer	يجيب
early	مبكراً	late	متأخر
transitive	فعل معتمد	intransitive	فعل غير معتمد (اللازم)
turn on	يشغل	turn off	يطفى

★ Definitions ★

a lawn mower	: is a machine for cutting grass on lawns.
vacuum cleaner	: a machine to keep your house clean
entertain	: do something that interests people
personal	: for you or belonging to you
recognise	: know a person because you have seen them before
voice	: you hear this when someone speaks
volcano	: a place from which fire and hot rocks sometimes come
planet	: a large object in space that moves around a star



★ Robots in our life ★

Scientists have used robots for a long time. Some robots dive under water to study the sea: Others are sent inside volcanoes to study places that are dangerous. In 2012, a robot went to another planet to study the soil and the gases there.

Personal robots are designed to help people with jobs at home. They include robot vacuum cleaner, to clean floors and lawn mowers to cut the grass in parks and gardens.

Now, an engineer has designed a robot that can recognise people. When you speak, it will answer! It will hear your voice and turn its head in order to look at you. It will say hello to you when you come home and it can read a story to children. It can give a message to the right person in the family. It can even remind you to send your emails.

Some robots are designed to have friend faces so that children will think they are toys. These robots are very useful in hospital where they can entertain children and help them to feel better.

Language notes

ملاحظات لغوية

1- another – other – others

1- يأتي بعد (another) اسم مفرد يعد ، أو (one)، أو (اسم جمع + رقم):

☞ I need **another** cup.

☞ I have already eaten two sandwiches though now I want **another one**.

☞ In **another** 20 years, my laptop is going to be obsolete.

2- يأتي بعد (other) اسم جمع ، أو (ones)، أو يمكن أن نسبقها بـ **the** ويأتي بعدها مفرد أو جمع:

☞ I need **other** cups.

☞ We don't need those books, we need **other ones**.

☞ I don't want this one, I want **the other one**.

3- يأتي بعد (others) فعل جمع ، لا يأتي بعدها اسم مفرد أو جمع :

☞ These shoes are too small. Do you have any **others**?

☞ Some boys are thin but the **others** are fat.

2- so that / In order to ... / to ... لكي

فعل مصدر + (can / could) + فاعل + so that + جملة (مضارع/ماضي) -1

☞ We invented the calendar **so that** we could plant our crops at the right time.

☞ She studies her lesson hard so that she can get the full mark.

فعل مصدر + [in order to / to] + جملة -2

☞ Dyson began to invent machines **to** help people in the house.

☞ She studies hard **in order to** get high marks.

3- How to + inf. فعل مصدر

☞ He showed me **how to** use the new device.

☞ They taught me **how to** write a paragraph.



Language Functions

الوظائف اللغوية

- Emphasising a point

التأكيد على معلومة أو نقطة

- You must remember to + فعل مصدر - You must remember that + جملة

☞ You must remember to describe characters well.

☞ You must remember that grammar rules are important.

- Don't forget to + فعل مصدر - Don't forget that + جملة

☞ Don't forget to wait us at the train station.

☞ Don't forget that we will come tomorrow.

- It's + فعل مصدر + to + صفة - It's + فعل مصدر + not to + صفة

☞ It's necessary to eat healthy food.

☞ It is important not to waste your time.

- It's + فعل مصدر + for + (n.) + to + صفة - It's + فعل مصدر + for + (n.) + not to + صفة

☞ It's necessary for students to study hard.

☞ It's important for police officers not to be fat.

Study the following

1- Adverbs الأحوال

- يصف الحال الفعل ، وتتكون معظم الأحوال بإضافة ly للصفة مثل : carefully – beautifully

- He sings beautifully. - She uses the computer carefully.

- الصفة دائما تسبق الموصوف ، أما تأتي بعد V. to be ، وتصف الفاعل:

- He has a beautiful voice. - She is intelligent.

- هناك أحوال شاذة لا يضاف لها (ly) مثل : fast – fast / good – well / hard – hard

- He is a good speaker. He speaks well. - She is fast. She runs fast.

- إذا كانت الصفة منتهية بـ (y) تحذف ونضيف (ily) لتصبح حال :

- He was happy. He sang happily.

2- since this time + (جملة مضارع تام) / [has/have + p.p.]

- Since this time, he has invented other things to make things easier.

- Since this time, we have made great things.

3- It [is/was] + فعل مصدر + to + (اسم / مفعول) + for + صفة

- It is good for Mr. Waleed to speak English at the classroom. (مضارع)

- It was important for us to know when the Nile was going to flood. (ماضي)

4- used for + V + ing / اسم - used to + مصدر

- People have used ships for transport.

- Cars are used to carry people.

- Knives are used for cutting things.



Lessons 1&2



Exercises

Lessons 1&2

1-Complete the following dialogue

Salem and Omar are talking outside a classroom in their school.

Salem : Who is our science teacher talking to in the classroom?

Omar : She is talking to the scientist who is giving us a talk next week.

Salem : Oh, yes, I forgot.

Omar : (1)..... . It's essential.

Salem : Yes, you're right, it is very important. (2).....?

Omar : (3) I think he's going to talk about useful robots.

Salem : (4).....?

Omar : In my opinion, the most important invention is the phone.

2- Write what would you say in each of the following situations:

1-You want emphasise that grammar rules are important.

.....

2- You want your friend not to forget to bring his laptop with him.

.....

3- It is important for your friend to come early. Emphasise the point.

.....

4- You want to make your friend remember to write the essay.

.....

5- You want to make your sister Soha not to forget to attend the meeting.

.....

6- Tell your friend not to forget that many people would starve if the crops did not grow.

.....

3- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1- There are eight that go around the sun.

a- plants b- sails c- planets d- stars

2- Use the cleaner to clean-the kitchen floor.

a- lawn b- mower c- vacuum d- oar

3-It is to take your passport when you go to another country.

a-easy b- essential c-enjoyable d- enormous

4-Some robots dive under water to study the sea. are sent inside volcanoes.

a- Another b- Others c- Other d-The other

5-robots are designed to help people with jobs at home.

a- International b- Underground c- Personal d- Public



6-are used to clean the floor of our houses

- a- Lawn mowers b- Vacuum cleaners c- Oars d- Sails

7- are used to cut the grass in parks and garden.

- a- Vacuum cleaners b- Lawn mowers c- Sails d- Oars

8- The students must one experiments.

- a- make b- eat c- drink d- do

9- It is for an experiment to test that an idea is completely new.

- a- necessary b- ugly c- sad d- drunk

10- Would you like cup of coffee?

- a- another b- others c- other d- the others

11- What's the name of the who made the first radio?

- a- discoverer b- inventor c- watcher d- player

12- When water boils, we can see

- a- water b- fire c- steam d- air

13- The film was! I really liked it.

- a- silly b- boring c- bad d- fantastic

14- The sailor got into the boat and used the to sail across the lake.

- a- sails b- soil c- cells d- suns

15- There was no wind, so they used the....to take the boat to the island.

- a- cloths b- oars c- stairs d- knives

16- Robots children in hospitals.

- a- kill b- cause c- frighten d- entertain

17- I feel during an exam so that I get low marks.

- a- happy b- interested c- clever d- nervous

18- Mother gave me a for my birthday. It was a nice watch.

- a- plane b- present c- e-mail d- e-book

19- You hear this when someone speaks It is his or her

- a- voice b- sound c- face d- nose

20- A/An..... is a large place from which fire and hot rocks sometimes come.

- a- air b- drought c- flood d- volcano

21- Alfred Nobel was a great.....

- a- inventor b- thief c- detective d- pilot

22- The Nobel Prizes arefor scientists, writers and other people.

- a- books b- pens c- awards d- houses

23- I wasn't able to anyone without my glasses.

- a- visit b- recognize c- study d- talk



4- Read and correct the underlined words:

- 1- You must remember to describing characters well. (.....)
- 2- Since this time, she built a nice house. (.....)
- 3- He went to school in order to he could learn many subjects. (.....)
- 4- His writing is bad. He writes bad. (.....)
- 5- She is a clever girl. The another are bad. (.....)
- 6- Lawn mowers are used to clean the floor of our houses. (.....)
- 7- It is important to preparing well for the exam. (.....)
- 8- To see means to know a person because you have seen them before. (.....)
- 9- Ahmed has a beautiful sound. (.....)
- 10- The steam ships used water to move. (.....)

5- Rewrite the following using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:

- 1- He is a good player. (well)
.....
- 2- He visited Japan to learn Japanese. (so that)
.....
- 3- Reading carefully for you is very important. (It is...)
.....
- 4- Don't forget to describe characters well. (remember)
.....
- 5- You must remember to turn off taps after use. (Don't...)
.....
- 6- She studied hard so that she could get high marks. (in order to....)
.....
- 7- Using papyrus was essential for the ancient Egyptians. (essential)
.....
- 8- Don't forget that all people will die if the sun explodes. (must)
.....
- 9 - Don't forget to send the e-mail. (Remember)
.....
- 10 - Perhaps he will visit China. (might)
.....



6- Read the following, then answer the questions :

The ancient Egyptian year had three seasons. It's essential to remember that calendars were very important in ancient Egypt. Farmers, needed to know when to plant crops. In addition, they needed to know when the Nile was going to flood.

I want to emphasise how important food was at this time. Don't forget that many people would starve if the crops did not grow. The Egyptians invented the calendar so that they could plant their crops at the right time. The calendar had twelve months of thirty days, which is 360 days a year. They also had five holidays!

A- Answer the following questions:

1- What is the main idea of this passage?

.....

2- Why did ancient Egyptians invent the calendar?

.....

3- Why do you think it was important for the ancient Egyptians to know when the Nile was going to flood?

.....

B- Choose the correct answer:

4- What does the underlined word "they" refer to?

a- crops b- calendars c- farmers d- seasons

5- The word "starve" means be

a- very thirsty b- very hungry c- very hot d- very bad

7- Write a paragraph of seven (7) sentences about one of the following:

- The most important inventions.
- What are Robots going to do in the future?

.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....



Unit (6)

Inventors

Lessons 3&4

★ Vocabulary ★

ancient Egypt	مصر الفرعونية	voice	صوت إنسان
reason	سبب	strong	قوي
transport	نقل	across	عبر
expert	خبير	goods	بضائع
building boats	بناء قوارب	oar	مجداف للمركب
in around	في حوالي	wooden	خشبي
large	ضخم - واسع	sail	يبحر - شراع
century	قرن	rope	حبل
guest	ضيف	steam	بخار
mistake	خطأ	oil	زيت - بترول خام
map	خريطة	transport ships	سفن نقل
sun cream	كريم للشمس	steam ships	سفن بخارية
nervous	عصبي	twentieth	العشرين
during	أثناء	powerful	قوي
present	هدية - مضارع	famous	مشهور
seat	مقعد	notebook	كراسه - دفتر
wheel	عجلة	beautifully	بطريقة جميلة
fantastic	رائع	What time..?	متى ؟ / ما الوقت ؟
lake	بحيرة	patient	مريض / صبور
island	جزيرة	carefully	بحرص
season	موسم	science	علوم
essential	ضروري	better place	مكان أفضل
calendar	نتيجة	level	مستوى
plant crops	محاصيل نباتية	stamp	طابع بريد
flood	فيضان	chemist	كيميائي / صيدلي
main idea	فكرة أساسية - رئيسية	chemistry	كيمياء
passage	ممر - قطعة	success	نجاح
dust	تراب	medicine	طب - دواء
dirt	قذارة	sentence	جملة
environment	بيئة	police station	قسم الشرطة



★ Conjugation of verbs ★

Present	Meaning	Past	P.P
offer	يعرض - عرض	offered	offered
boil	يغلي	boiled	boiled
recognise	يتعرف	recognised	recognised
face	يواجه - وجه	faced	faced
travel	يسافر	traveled	traveled
cross	يعبر	crossed	crossed
examine	يفحص	examined	examined
correct	يصحح	corrected	corrected
produce	ينتج	produced	produced
starve	يموت جوعاً	starved	starved
take	يأخذ	took	taken
sell	يبيع	sold	sold
cut	يقطع - يقص	cut	cut

★ Prepositions ★

remember to + inf.	يتذكر أن	begin to + inf	يبدأ أن ..
famous for	مشهور بـ	most of ...	غالبية
tie together with	يربط سوياً بـ	an expert at	خبير في ..
move forward	تحرك للأمام	for sure	للتأكيد

★ Words & Opposites ★

necessary	ضروري	unnecessary	غير ضروري
important	مهم	unimportant	غير مهم
different	مختلف	similar	مشابه

★ Definitions ★

oars	: A long pole عمود used for rowing يجدف a boat.
sails	: A large piece of strong cloth fixed on a boat to make the wind push the boat.
steam	: The gas produced when water is boiled.
personal	: For you or belonging to you.



★ Listening Text ★

Teacher : So, Let's talk about the science competition. You must remember how important it is for you to enter. You learned so much about scientific research.

Student : I have got a lot of ideas of some inventions already.

Teacher : That is very good. But don't forget that the idea is the easiest part of a project. One you got an idea, you have to think about the design, then you have to do several experiments and test them to see if they work.

Student : What kind of ideas are you looking for in the competition?

Teacher : It is necessary for you to be something different, do some research and find out if your idea is completely new.

Student : It is difficult to think of something to invent.

Teacher : It can be difficult at first I agree. I agree, it might be easier to think of a problem that you want to solve. First, it is important to remember to look on something that you are really interested in and don't forget there is a prize. The winners will visit the science museum where they will present their designs to people who work there.

★ The Invention of Ships and Sails ★

In ancient Egypt, like today, most of our important cities were built along the Nile. For this reason, people have used the river for transport for many years. The people also became experts at building boats.

Early boats:

* In around 4000 BCE, the ancient Egyptians made small boats from Papyrus. They used Oars to move them forwards.

Wooden boats and Sails:

* Later, they used wood tied together with ropes to build boats. They also invented the first sail in order to move faster up the river when the wind blow.

Transport ships:

* In around 2500 BCE, people began to build larger and stronger boats. Ships could travel across the sea to sell goods in other countries.

Steam and oil:

* Ships needed the wind until the early 1800s, when the first steamships began to cross the seas.

* In the twentieth century, oil was used to take powerful ships around the world.



Language notes

ملاحظات لغوية

1 – for a long time / period لفترة طويلة

They have used robots for a long time.

2 – plant / planet كوكب / نبات - يزرع

They plant more trees here. They sent a robot to another planet.

3 – remember / remind يتذكر / يُذكر

I remember his number well.

The robot can remind you to send your e-mails.

4 – help + مصدر + to + مفعول / help + الشيء + with مفعول

Robots can help people with jobs at home.

Robots can help children to feel better.

5 – send into space يرسل للفضاء

A robot was sent into space.

The government sent a robot into space.

6 – invention / discovery اكتشاف / اختراع

The mobile is a great invention.

The discovery of the femto Second is important.

7 – along the Nile بامتداد او بمحاذاة النيل

A lot of cities were built along the Nile.

8 – expert at / خبير فى

People have become experts at building boats.

9 – make + شيء + from من / صنع شيء من / made from (شيء تغير شكله) / made of (شيء لم يتغير)

The Egyptians made small boats from papyrus.

The chair is made of wood. Glass is made from sand.

10 – wooden / خشبي = wood خشب

This table is wooden, it is made of wood.

11 – century / ألفيه (الف عام) / millennium / عقد 10 سنوات / decade / قرن 100 عام

A century is a period of 100 years. We are in the 21st century.

A decade is a period of 10 years. I lived a hard decade in Sudan.

A millennium is a period of 1000 years.

12 – do research / يقوم بعملية / do experiments / يقوم بتجارب / يقوم ببحث

They are doing research on this project.

You have to do several experiments and test them.

The doctor did an operation. My cousin had an operation.

13 – present designs to / يعرض او يقدم التصميمات امام

The winners will present their designs to people.



Grammar

Verb & Object

الفعل والمفعول

Transitive and intransitive verbs

الفرق بين الفعل المتعد والفعل اللازم

1 Transitive verb الفعل المتعد

- يحتاج الفعل المتعد إلي مفعول غالباً.

- He gave her the message.
- They asked me a question.
- I enjoyed the film.

- بعض الأفعال المتعدية:

[ask - like - discuss - attend - use - get - need - want - join - take - buy - receive - believe - make - send]

2 Intransitive verb الفعل اللازم

- لا يحتاج الفعل اللازم إلي مفعول :

- Mohamed is sleeping.
- The train left early.
- The building collapsed suddenly.

- بعض الأفعال اللازمة:

[run - die - fall - appear - leave - come - sleep - work - live - wait - happen - arrive - collapse]

ملحوظات هامة

- بعض الأفعال تأتي متعدية أحياناً ولازمة أحياناً :

✂ I **stopped** the car.

✂ He **runs** a factory. (= manage)

✂ The car **stopped**.

✂ He **runs** along the beach.

- المفعول غير المباشر يأتي بعد الفعل المتعد، ثم المفعول المباشر ، وإلا نحتاج حرف جر (to/for) :

✂ He gave **her** the message.

= He gave the message **to her**.

✂ They asked **me** a question.

= They asked a question **to me**.

✂ Ali sent **me** an e-mail.

= Ali sent an e-mail **to me**.

✂ Sarah bought **them** a present.

= Sarah bought a present **for them**.

- ليس هناك فرق كبير بين (to/for) ، ولكن (to) للحركة والانتقال، و (for) للمنفعة أو من أجل:

✂ [send - give - tell] + **to** + مفعول غير مباشر = My mum told a story **to her**.

✂ [bake - buy - make] + **for** + مفعول غير مباشر = They baked a cake **for us**.

- تذكر ضمائر المفعول (تأتي غالباً مفعول غير مباشر بعد الفعل المتعد) وضمائر الفاعل (أول الجملة):

ضمائر الفاعل	I	He	She	It	They	We	You
ضمائر المفعول	me	him	her	it	them	us	you

You will face it like that

✂ Did you buy me that smart phone?

(for me)

- Did you buy that smart phone for me?

✂ He sent me a book.

(to me)

- He sent a book to me.

✂ They sold the farm to him.

(sold him)

- They sold him the farm.

✂ The class bought their teacher some flowers.

(for their teacher)

- The class bought some flowers for their teacher.



Lessons 3&4



Exercises

Lessons 3&4

1-Complete the following dialogue:

Hamdy and Akram are talking together.

Hamdy : Have you ever visited the Pyramids?

Akram : Yes, I have.

Hamdy : (1)?

Akram : Last month. What about you?

Hamdy : I've (2)

Akram : Oh, dear. They're (3)

You'll really like them if you go.

Hamdy : (4)?

Akram : Yes, the Egyptian Museum is a very nice place.

2- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1- Eman sent an email.

a- for me b- me c- mine d- to me

2- I gave.....the message.

a- for my sister b- my sister c- to my sister d- hers

3- Here's Mona's book. Please can you give it?

a- her to b- her c- to her d- her for

4- I went to the shops for some eggs. I carried.....carefully.

a- them to b- them c- to them d- them for

5- The flight was at five o'clock, so we early in the morning.

a- left b- left it c- left to d- left for

6- It's not your computer. You shouldn't use..... .

a- it to b- to it c- it for d- it

7-Did you read my email? I sent.....yesterday.

a- to it b- it to c- it d- it for

8- I bought the newspaper

a- for you b- because you c- you d- you for

9- Tourist information centres give mapsfor free.

a- tourist b- to tourist c- tourist to d- tourist for

10 - Dyson won many prizes for his

a- Invent b- inventor c- invented d- invention

11- His most famous invention is a new kind of vacuum

a- clean b- cleaner c- cleans d- cleaned

12- Since this time, He ... other things to make things easier for people.

a- will invent b- has invented c- invented d- invents

13- They used tied together with ropes to build boat.

a- plastic b- iron c- mud d- wood



14- Egyptians have always used the Nile togoods.

- a- transport b- sink c- fly d- light

15- You must remember vegetables every day.

- a- eat b- eats c- to eat d- ate

16- Naguib Mahfouz was an Egyptian who won the Nobel Prize.

- a- singer b- player c- runner d- writer

17- Ahmed Zewail, won a Nobel Prize for..... in 1999.

- a- chemistry b- history c- engineering d- writing

3- Rewrite the following using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:

1- Maya gave her sister a pen. (to her)

2- The class brought their teacher some flowers. (for their teacher)

3- Did you buy me that smartphone? (for me)

4- The owner sold the house to Ahmed. (sold Ahmed)

5- Grandmother baked him a cake. (for him)

6- I gave my sister her book. (gave her book)

4- Read and correct the underlined words:

1- Black Beauty tells to us the story of his life. (.....)

2- Mother gave a present me for my birthday. (.....)

3- I offered a drink in the guest. (.....)

4- Manar gave to the daughter a sandwich for lunch. (.....)

5- The doctor examined the patient careful. (.....)

6- The ancient Egyptians invited the sail. (.....)

5- Write a an e-mail about

famous Egyptian invention

- Your e-mail address is ahmed @yahoo.com

- Your friend's e-mail address is hanya@yahoo.com



Unit (6)



Test (1)



Unit (6)

① Supply the following dialogue:

Teacher : Do you know the name of any inventor?

Student : (1)

Teacher : (2)

Student : Edison invented the electric bulb in addition to many useful things.

Teacher : (3)

Student : Yes, I think inventions are very important for people.

Teacher : What is the most important invention?

Student : (4)

② What do you say in the following situations

1- You are sure that your friend is intelligent.

2- You want to remind your father to buy you a mobile.

3- Someone advises you not to smoke.

③ Read the following passage and answer the questions:

It is essential to remember that calendars were very important in ancient Egypt .Farmers needed to know when to plant crops. In addition, they needed to know when the Nile was going to flood. I want to emphasise how important food was at this time .Don't forget that many people would starve if the crops didn't grow. The Egyptians invented the calendar so that they can plant their crops at the right time. The calendar had 12 months of thirty days which is 360 days a year. They also had 5 holidays.

A) Answer the following questions:

1- What is the main idea of this passage?

2- Why did the ancient Egyptians invent the calendar?

3- Why do you think they needed to know when the Nile was going to flood?



B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

4- The word "they " refer to

- a- crops b- calendar c- farmers d- holidays

The word starve means to be very

- a- hot b- thirsty c- hungry d- happy

The Reader : Black Beauty

4 (a) Read and match:

A	B
1- Beauty woke up and	a) frightened as the John spoke so softly to him.
2- Ginger told Black Beauty	b) as it is hard to move horses when there is a fire
3- Beauty stopped feeling	c) firefighters put out the fire.
4- Squire's friend respected John	d) saw the air was filled with smoke
	e) that she was frightened

B) Answer the following questions :

1- What fell down across the road?

.....

2-Why did Black beauty stop on the bridge?

.....

3-How did Black Beauty know that there was a fire?

.....

4- Who saved the horses from the fire?

.....

5- What did Black beauty do when he was safe from the fire?

.....

5 Choose the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

1- When erupt, they send dust into the atmosphere.

- a- volcanoes b- wind c- storms d- gases

2- I need a cleaner to clean the carpets.

- a- van b- loom c- vaccine d- vacuum

3- Some people are going to because of lack of food.

- a- starve b- start c- save d- thirst

4- We should reclaim desert land we can grow more food.

- a- so that b- to c- in order to d- too

5- My father is going to buy a car..... my elder brother.

- a- for b- to c- about d- so

6- The teacher me another chance.

- a- ran b- gave c- went d- walked



6 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) in brackets:

1- Ahmed plays hard to win the tennis match. (so that)

2- Mona offered Hala a cup of tea. (to)

3- The ancient Egyptians used papyrus to make small boats. (Papyrus)

7 Write a paragraph of (7) sentences about :

"Robots in our life"

Unit (6)



Test (2)



Unit (6)

1 Supply the following dialogue

Sara and Nora are talking about inventions

Sara : What are you reading about?

Nora : (1)

Sara : Inventions! (2)?

Nora : The most important inventions are the mobile and the plane.

Sara : (3)

Nora : I think so, too.

Sara : (4)?

Nora : Yes, we need more invention in our life for easier life.

2 What do you say in the following situations

1 – You remind your sister to do her homework.

2 – You are asked about the most important inventions.

3 – You suggest taking part in the competition.



3 Read the following passage and answer the questions:

It was a rainy day in January. The farmers were in their fields. A boy ran towards them shouting for help. He told them that the river was coming up and they were in danger. They didn't believe him because he was just a little boy. An hour later, the high water in the river came over the land. The farmers now knew that the boy's words were true. They tried to save their fields and houses, but they couldn't control the water of the river. They had to run away. They were very sad because they lost both their crops and houses. In the afternoon, some engineers came with a number of machines and dug a canal from the river. Some machines were also used to pump the water out of the fields.

A) Answer the following questions:

1 – Why was the boy shouting?

.....

2 – Which season was it?

.....

3 – Why did the engineer come?

.....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

4- The underlined word " they" refers to

a- fields b- machines c- engineers d- farmers

5-The farmers were sad because they lost

a- their pumps b- their crops and houses
c- machines d- their children

The Reader : Black Beauty

4 (a) Read and match:

(A)	(B)
1. When the fire was bigger	a. softly and gently to the horses
2. John spoke	b. with a lantern
3. The man came	c. the building collapsed
4. The firefighters put out the fire	d. after many hours e. After few hours



B – Answer the following questions

1 – Who is Joe Green?

.....

2 – How old was Joe Green when he came to work?

.....

3 – What did Squire Gordon ask John?

.....

4 – What did John say about Joe?

.....

5 – How old was John when he started work?

.....

5 Choose the correct answer from a,b,c or d

1 – To is to do something that interests people.

a. entertain b. voice c. enter d. recognize

2. I went to the shop for some eggs. I carried..... carefully.

a. it b. they c. them d – him

3. When water boils, we can see

a. steam b. team c. e-dream d. e-foam

4. The ancient Egyptians became experts building boats

a. at b. within c. to d. by

5. Ships could travel the sea to sell goods in other countries.

a. cross b. across c. crosses d. under

6. The ancient Egyptians made small boats from

a. paper b. papyrus c. plastic metal

6 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) in brackets .

1- Ali is interested in reading. He also writes short stories. (in addition)

.....

2- The owner sold the house to Ahmad. (sold Ahmad)

.....

3- A computer is used to send e-mails. (sending)

.....

7 Write a paragraph of (7) sentences about :

"What are scientists going to invent in the future?"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



Practice test (2-A)



(A) Language Functions

1- Finish the following dialogue:

Adam and Faris are talking about Dr Mostafa Musharafa.

Adam : Hi, Faris. What are you doing?

Faris : I'm reading about Dr Mostafa Musharafa.

Adam : (1)

Faris : Dr Mostafa Musharafa was able to work out some really difficult problems in maths and science.

Adam : (2) What else does the article say?

Faris : It says that he was the first Egyptian to become a Doctor of Science.

Adam : That's a great achievement! Do you think that he was a genius?

Faris : (3)

2- Write what you would say in each of the following situations:

1- Your mother asks you how you did on your English exam. Express certainty.

2- Your friend asks you if you met the writer who visited your school last week. This was not possible because you were ill.

3- You are in a busy street with your younger brother. You advise him not to walk too close to the road.

(B) Reading Comprehension

3- Read the following, then answer the questions:

There have been hotels for hundreds of years, but they might be different in the future. Usually there are friendly people who write your name and address, carry your bags to your room and give you breakfast in the morning. In Japan, there is a hotel where there are no people working at all: all the work there is done by robots.

When you first arrive at the hotel to check in, a robot tells you what to do you should enter information about yourself on a computer. The robot is able to communicate in lots of different languages. You don't need a key for your room because a computer in the door will recognise you. There is even a robot in each room who is able to turn lights on and off and answer simple questions.

1- What is the main idea of the passage?

2- Why don't you need a key to your room?

3- What problems do you think you might have in a hotel like this?



4- Check in means

a- report that you have arrived

b- sleep

c- wake up

d- park your car

5- The underlined word "there" refers to

a- the hotel

b- Japan

c- the robot

d- the future

(C) The Reader

4- A- Match column A with column B

(A)	(B)	
1- John Manly	a) saved Squire Gordon from the broken bridge.	(.....)
2- Black Beauty	b) hit the horses hard.	(.....)
3- Ginger	c) began to respect Squire Gordon.	(.....)
4- Merrylegs	d) was Squire Gordon's helper.	(.....)
	e) wanted to teach the boys a lesson about horses.	(.....)

B- Answer the following questions:

1- What made Black Beauty's journey with Squire Gordon and John difficult?

.....

2- What happened at the bridge?

.....

3- Who started the fire at the stable?

.....

4- Why do you think that John was able to take the horses fr

.....

5- Why do you think that moving horses when there is a fire is very hard?

.....

(D) Usage and Writing

5- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1- I gave..... the message.

a- my sister

b- for my sister

c- to my sister

d- hers

2- There is a lot of traffic today. We..... be late.

a- must

b- should

c- might

d- won't

3- The maths homework was very difficult. Were you do it?

a- could

b- able to

c- able

d- can

4- It is to take your passport when you go to another country.

a- easy

b- essential

c- enjoyable

d- enormous

5- Ola is always She will do very well in her exams.

a- noisy

b- lazy

c- hardworking

d- exhausted

6- There are eight that go around the sun.

a- plants

b- sails

c- planets

d- stars



1- I couldn't find the pen that you lost. (able)

2- Perhaps I'll Wear a jacket today, I'm not sure. (might)

3- Adel might visit us tomorrow. (I'm not sure)

1- Dr Musharafa was an experience in maths. (.....)

2- You can use the internet on your laptop in this library because it has books.
(.....)

3- Ahmed likes playing speed-ball. However, he enjoys playing football. (.....)

- A form of technology that is most useful to you.

- **Someone you know who is a genius.**



Practice test (2-B)



(A) - Language Functions

1- Finish the following dialogue:

Salem and Omar are talking outside a classroom in their school Salem:

Omar : Who is our science teacher talking to in the classroom?

Salem : She is talking to the scientist who is giving us a talk next week.

Omar : Oh, yes, I forgot.

Salem : (1) It's essential.

Omar : Yes, you're right, it is very important. (2)?

Salem: (3)..... . I think he's going to talk about useful robots.

2- Write what you would say in each of the following situations:

1- A friend says that Athens is bigger than London. You don't think this is correct.

.....

2- Your friend thinks he saw a cat in the hotel. You are certain that cats aren't allowed in the hotel.

.....

3- A friend asks you for the best way to revise before the test.

.....

(B) - Reading Comprehension

3- Read the following, then answer the questions:

Many famous people were amazing when they were children. Mozart was able to play music when he was three and could write music when he was five. Judit Polgar is a great chess player. She was able to win chess games against some adults when she was twelve years old and she won chess competitions when she was fifteen.

Karl Benz went to university to study to be an engineer when he was fifteen and he later invented the car. And the great scientist Marie Curie taught herself to read Russian and French when she was four. She could also help her older brothers and sisters with their maths homework! However, some people who do amazing things when they are children become ordinary adults: not all of them are able to become famous.

1- Why did Karl Benz go to university?

.....

2- Who taught Marie Curie to read Russian and French?

.....

3- Why do you think that many amazing children are notable to become famous when they grow up?

.....



4- The word ordinary means

a- not helpful

b- amazing

c- special

d- not special

5- The underlined word "*they*" refers to

a- amazing children

b- some adults

c- scientists

d- famous people

C- The Reader

4) A- Match column A with column B:

(A)	(B)	
1- Squire Gordon's friend	a) didn't listen to Black Beauty when he called out.	(.....)
2- The rider in the stable	b) walked out of the stable when Black Beauty called her.	(.....)
3- Ginger	c) smoked a cigarette and caused a fire.	(.....)
4- Mrs Gordon	d) was amazed because John saved the horses.	(.....)
	e) went with Squire Gordon to visit some friends.	(.....)

B- Answer the following questions:

1- Why didn't Black Beauty take Squire Gordon and John home the way they came?

.....

2- Why didn't John drive Black Beauty over the bridge?

.....

3- "And thank you, Black Beauty. You saved us." Who said this? What does it show about the kind of man he is?

.....

4- Why do you think that the horses wanted to stay in the stables although there was a fire?

.....

5. What happened when John came to take the horses from the stables?

.....

(D)- Usage and Writing

5) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1- you speak English when you were six?

a- Were

b- Do

c- Able

d- Could

2- Eman sent..... an email.

a- for me

b- me

c- mine

d- to me

3- Wear a coat. It rain today.

a- might

b- must

c- can't

d- mustn't

4- Use the cleaner to clean the kitchen floor.

a- lawn

b- mower

c- vacuum

d- oar



d- invite

d- ability

(must)

(could)

- an email to your friend who is entering a writing competition



Unit (7)

All About Sports

Lessons 1&2

★ Vocabulary ★

all about	كل شيء عن
basketball	كرة السلة
tennis	التنس
believe	يعتقد - يؤمن بـ
Egyptian sport	رياضة مصرية
racket	مضرب
rocket	صاروخ
similar to	مشابه لـ
rahat (hands)	راحة اليدين
twelfth century	القرن الثانى عشر
as many as	أكثر عدد ممكن من
indoor	داخل البيت - داخلي
court	ملعب
indoor courts	ملاعب داخلية
weather	طقس - جو
referee	حكم
trophy	كأس
wooden racket	مضرب خشبي
leather	جلد
filled	مملوء
horse hair	شعر الخيل
wool	صوف
rubber	مطاط
middle	منتصف
P.E. teacher	مدرس تربية رياضية
physical education	التربية الرياضية
physical	بدني - فيزيائي
education	تعليم
tent	خيمة

Canadian	كندي
pole	عارضة - عمود
each end	كل نهاية
bottom	قاع
popular	محبوب
although	بالرغم من
practise	يمارس - يتمرن
practice	تدريب - ممارسة
good at	جيد في
long bits	قطعة طويلة
each other	بعضهم البعض
meal	وجبة
revision	مراجعة
Olympic Games	الألعاب الأولمبية
huge	ضخم
stadium	إستاد
spectator	متفرج - مشاهد
athletes	لاعب رياضي
opponent	خصم / منافس
countries	بلاد
used to	يعتاد أن
in the past	في الماضي
longer	أطول
only	فقط
different	مختلف
speed ball	كرة السرعة
badminton	تنس الريشة
flute	ناي - مزمار
theatre	مسرح



★ Conjugation of verbs ★

Present	Meaning	Past	P.P
wait	ينتظر	waited	waited
measure	يقيس	measured	measured
weigh	يزن	weighed	weighed
tie	يربط - رابطة عنق	tied	tied
change	يغير	changed	changed
throw	يلقى - يرمى	threw	thrown
score	يسجل	scored	scored
cut off	يقطع	cut off	cut off
leave	يغادر	left	left
held	يعقد	hold	hold
grab	يمسك	grabbed	grabbed
hit	يضرب	hit	hit

★ Prepositions ★

wait in a queue	ينتظر فى طابور	have/has to + inf	يجب / مضطر أن
wait for	ينتظر (شيء / شخص)	too + to + inf.	جداً .. لدرجة ألا
wait to + inf.	ينتظر (فعل شيء)	to each other	لبعضهم البعض
made from	مصنوع من (مادة تغيرت)	It's fun for + V.ing	من المبهج أن ..
made of	مصنوع من (مادة لم تتغير)	get up	يستيقظ

★ Words & Opposites ★

tiny = very small	صغير الحجم	huge	ضخم
inside	بالداخل	outside	بالخارج
indoor	داخلي	outdoor	في الهواء الطلق

★ Definitions ★

poles	: long bits of metal or woo
indoor courts	: places where a tennis or basket ball match is play
score	: what you need to do to win in some sports games
Break (n)	: a short time for a rest, for example between lessons
Break (v)	: fall into two or more pieces when something is hit .
a can	: something metal that you buy with drink inside



★ Sports History ★

Some experts believe that tennis was first an Egyptian sport, because the word racket is very similar to the Arabic word rahat (hands). Other people believe that it was invented by the French in the eleventh or twelfth century.

By the thirteenth century, there were as many as 1,800 indoor courts, so people didn't have to wait for good weather in order to play. In those days, players had to hit the ball with their hands.

By 1500, the game was played with a wooden racket. The very first tennis balls were made from leather filled with horse hair or wool. Today, tennis balls are rubber and have to measure 6.54-7.3 centimetres across the middle and weigh 56-59.49 grams. Basketball was invented in 1891 by a Canadian P.E teacher, James Naismith.

In that year, he thought: *"I must find a new sport for my students to play in winter, because it's too cold to play outside,"*

The new game could be played inside in any weather. James Naismith tied two baskets to poles at each end of the court. A player had to throw the ball into the basket in order to score. At first before the bottoms of tile baskets were cut off, a player had to take the ball out of the basket after he or she scored. The game is now very popular, although you must practise every day to be good at it.

Language notes

ملاحظات لغوية

1- in order to + inf. (فعل مصدر) = so that+ فاعل (can/could)+ مصدر

☞ He studied hard **in order to** get high marks.

☞ He studied hard **so that** he could get high marks

2- **Although** + جملة كاملة = **Despite** + اسم (noun) / v+ ing بالرغم من - برغم

☞ **Although** it was cold, he went out. ☞ **Despite** being cold, he went out.

☞ **Although** he played well, he lost. ☞ **Despite** playing well, he lost.

3- too+ صفة + to + inf. / so + صفة + that (جملة) .. جداً .. لدرجة أن

☞ It is **too** cold **to** play outside. ☞ This tea is **so** hot **that** I can't drink.

4- منذ ذلك الحين have/has + P.P since then. (جملة مضارع تام)

☞ The games have changed **since then**.

5- throw ... into / take .. out of يخرج .. من / يرمى .. فى

☞ The players had to **throw** the ball **into** the basket.

☞ The players had to **take** the ball **out of** the basket.

6- made of .. (مادة لا تتغير) / made from ... (مادة تتغير)

☞ The chair is **made of** wood. (المادة لم تتغير)

☞ The glass is **made from** sand. (المادة تغيرت)



Language Functions

الوظائف اللغوية

معلومات متناقضة	
- Contrasting information	
- However, <u>توضع في بداية الجملة الثانية ونضع (,) بعدها</u>	
☞ He studies hard. However , He doesn't answer well in the exam.	
☞ He ran fast. However , he didn't win the race.	
- Although <u>توضع في بداية الجملة الأولى</u>	
☞ Although he is poor, he is happy.	
☞ Although the players played well, they lost the match.	
- but <u>توضع في منتصف الجملتين</u>	
☞ He is rich but he isn't happy.	
☞ It was very cold but she went out.	
- Despite + (noun) اسم / v.ing <u>توضع في بداية الجملة الأولى</u>	
☞ Despite his poverty, he is happy.	
☞ Despite running fast, she lost the race.	

Study the following

1- Congratulating people		تهنئة الناس	
<ul style="list-style-type: none">- Congratulation on your + المناسبة (wedding / success ... etc)- I'd like to congratulate on+V.ing (المناسبة) (winning / getting the full mark..etc)- Congratulations! تهانينا- Well done. أحسنت			
2- Thanking people		شكر الناس	
<ul style="list-style-type: none">- Thank you. That's kind of you.- Thank you. You're so helpful.- Thank you for your help.- Thank you very much.			
3- Apology		الاعتذار	
<ul style="list-style-type: none">- I'm so sorry for + V. ing. / - I must apologise for + V.ing / - I'm really sorry.			
♥ Accepting apology قبول الاعتذار		♥ Refusing apology رفض الاعتذار	
<ul style="list-style-type: none">- Don't worry. That's okay.- Never mind.		<ul style="list-style-type: none">- No, dear. You must repair it.- Oh, dear. I need it.	
4- Encouraging people		تشجيع الناس	
<ul style="list-style-type: none">- Good job but try harder.- Come on. Don't give up.- Good job but you should try harder.- Do your best to be the best.			
5- Asking people's opinion		السؤال عن الرأي	
<ul style="list-style-type: none">- What do you think of + الشيء / الموضوع /?- What's your opinion about الشيء / الموضوع /?			
Give your opinion أعطاء رأيك		الموافقة Agreeing	عدم الموافقة Disagreeing
<ul style="list-style-type: none">- In my opinion,- I think		<ul style="list-style-type: none">* I agree.* I think so. `	<ul style="list-style-type: none">* I don't agree.* I don't think so.



1-Complete the following dialogue

Fawzi is talking about sports with his friend Munir.

Fawzi : How do you become good at basketball, Munir?

Munir : You have to be tall and fast. (1)

Fawzi : I'm not tall or fast. (2)

Munir : I'm sure that you are good at some sports. What about chess? I'm playing a game of chess this evening. Would you like to play?

Fawzi : (3)

Munir : OK, we can play another evening when you're not visiting your uncle.

Fawzi : (4)

Munir : I'm free tomorrow.

2- Write what would you say in each of the following situations:

1- Although you lost the game, you congratulate your opponent.

.....

2- Your friend has just found a new job.

.....

3- You have your friend's cassette. Apologise him

.....

4- Your father gives you a nice present. Thank him.

.....

5- You have made a mistake, but your friend forgives you.

.....

6- Say that you don't think this player is very good.

.....

7- Apologise to the referee for doing something wrong.

.....

8- You want to congratulate your team for winning a match.

.....

9- There is a player in your team that you don't think is trying very hard.

.....

10-You are a spectator and your team loses a match.

.....

11-The referee goes to you and says that you did something wrong.

.....

12- Give your opinion about football.

.....



3- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1- You need strong to be good at most sports.

- a- physical b- muscles c- feeling d- memory

2- Who is your in the tennis competition?

- a-opponent b- spectator c- inventor d- opposite

3-.....is the opposite of outside.

- a- Downstairs b-Inside c- Upstairs d- Out

4-Which of the following is a place where you play tennis or basketball?

- a- theatre b- class c- court d- pool

5- We can use..... to hold up a tent.

- a- poles b- signs c- costumes d- flutes

6-We can useto measure weight.

- a- grams b- kilometres c- centimetres d- metres

7- You need to to win a sports game.

- a- kick b- score c- hold d- grab

8- When they went camping, they had to a fire.

- a-light b- sight c- kite d- diet

9- Hala's cousin is a very good She wants to compete in the next Olympic Games.

- a- teacher b- athlete c- thief d- spectator

10-There were about 20,000.....at the football match.

- a- teachers b- athletes c- spectators d- travellers

11-Mariam got a for winning the sports competition.

- a-old book b- TV set c- table d- trophy

12-The stopped the game and told the basketball player to throw the ball again.

- a- goalkeeper b-government c-referee d- boy

13- Our team is playing well, but our are playing better.

- a- opponents b-enemies c- spectators d-referees

14- Some experts believe that tennis was first an Egyptian

- a- lesson b- language c- sport d- song

15-We use a To hit tge ball in tennis.

- a- rocket b-racket c-rock d-book

16- Chess is ansport.

- a- outdoor b- outside c- indoor d-out

17- The very first tennis balls were made from filled with horse hair or wool.

- a- leather b- weather c- feather d-season



18- Today, tennis balls are rubber and have to 6.54-7.3 centimetres.

- a- weigh b- measure c- count d- send

19- Basketball was by a Candian PE teacher, James Naismith.

- a- eaten b- drawn c-discovered d- invented

20- are places where a tennis or basketball match is played.

- a- Schools b-Libraries c-Courts d-Cinemas

21- May is a better time to visit England than August. the weather is cooler, there aren't as many tourists.

- a- Although b- In addition c- But d- Also

22- Basketball is a popular sport., I prefer tennis.

- a- Because b-Furthermore c- However d- But

23- Ali is very good at tennis., he is a very fast runner.

- a- In addition to b- In addition c- However d- And

24- We use to measure weights.

- a . grams b. kilometers c. meters d. centimeters

25- We need to to win a sports game.

- a. kick b. score c. hold d. grab

26- Hala's cousin is a very good She will compete in the Olympics

- a – engineer b. athlete c. vet d. trainer

27- There were about 20.000 at the football match.

- a. trainers b – spectators c. referees d. players

28- Mariam got a for winning the sports competition.

- a – trophy b – apostrophe c. bottle d. sword

29- The stopped the game and told the player to play again.

- a - player b. referee c. opponent d. trainer

30- Our team is playing well, but our are playing better.

- a. opponents b. spectators c. managers d – referees

31- This hotel is new., it is less expensive.

- a. Furthermore b. in addition to c. beside d. because

32- Basketball is a popular sport., I prefer tennis.

- a. However b. so c. because d. in addition to

33- Ali is very good at tennis., he is a very fast runner.

- a – However b. in addition c. despite d. in spite of

34- It is not light it is

- a. white b. heavy c. clever d. park

35- are long bits of metal or wood.

- a. e-poles b. pools c. peels d. meals



4- Read and correct the underlined words:

- 1- The sailor stopped the football game when one of the players was hurt.
(.....)
- 2- The athlete told the players to shake hands after the tennis match.
(.....)
- 3- There were two thousand statues watching the game at the sports stadium.
(.....)
- 4- Look, I've got an invention to Mona's family party next week.
(.....)
- 5- What time does it get dark in the morning?
(.....)
- 6- He is a good swimmer. Although, he doesn't practise it a lot.
(.....)
- 7- However she is fat, she won the race.
(.....)
- 8- Birds can fly easily because their bones are very heavy.
(.....)
- 9- Egypt is an agricultural country although it has a lot of desert.
(.....)
- 10- You have to buy tickets for a feet in the stadium.
(.....)
- 11- Congratulation on win the trophy.
(.....)

5- Rewrite the following using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:

- 1- It's sunny today, but it's not very hot. (However)
.....
- 2- Although they are rich, they aren't happy. (but)
.....
- 3- Ali is a tall boy . However, he isn't in the basket team. (but)
.....
- 4- Cairo is a big city. However, it is a crowded city. (Although)
.....
- 5- Although English is easy, learning grammar is difficult. (However)
.....
- 6- He usually went to school on foot. (used to)
.....
- 7- Birds can fly easily because they haven't heavy bones. (light)
.....
- 8- It's fun to play tennis. (playing)
.....
- 9- I'm sorry for breaking your glass. (must apologise)
.....
- 10- Thank you. You have helped me a lot. (for)
.....
- 11- What's your opinion about the film? (think)
.....



5- Read the following, then answer the questions :

Some experts believe that tennis was first an Egyptian sport, because the word racket is very similar to the Arabic word rahat (hands). Other people believe that it was invented by the French in the eleventh or twelfth century. By the thirteenth century, there were as many as 1,800 indoor courts, so people didn't have to wait for good weather in order to play. In those days players had to hit the ball with their hands. By 1500, the game was played with a wooden racket. The very first tennis balls were made from leather filled with horse hair or wool. Today, tennis balls are rubber and have to measure 6.54-7.3 centimetres across the middle and weigh 56-59.49 grams.

A- Answer the following questions:

1- What is the main idea in the passage?

.....

2- When did people believe it was invented?

.....

3- When was the game played with a wooden racket?

.....

B- Choose the correct answer:

4- The first tennis balls were made from

a- plastic b- iron c- leather d- cotton

5- The ball weighs 56-59.49

a- grams b- kilos c- centimetres d- metres

6- Write a paragraph of seven (7) sentences about one of the following:

"Speed-ball"

- What equipment do you need?
- How many players are on each team?
- What do you have to do?

.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....



Unit (7)

All About Sports

Lessons 3&4

★ Vocabulary ★

referee	حكم
opponent	منافس - خصم
spectator	مشاهد - متفرج
team	فريق
match	مباراة
yell	يهتف - يصيح
unkind words	كلمات قاسية
the other team	الفريق الآخر
did something wrong	يفعل شيء خطأ
disagree	لا يوافق
opinion	رأي
try hard	يحاول جاهداً
good sport	رياضة جيدة
reason	سبب
final	نهائي
judo	رياضة الجودو
injured	مجروح
self-respect	احترام النفس
ticket	تذكرة
seat	مقعد
event	حدث
side	جانب
horse riding	ركوب الخيل
equipment	معدات / أدوات
wear a helmet	يرتدي خوذة
special shoes	أحذية خاصة
championship	بطولة
sports event	حدث رياضي
runner	عداء
go camping	يذهب للتخييم

contrast	تضاد
achievement	إنجاز
really	حقيقي
fit	لائق بدنياً
best	الأفضل - الأحسن
dictionary	قاموس
opposite	مقابل - مضاد
similar meaning	معنى مشابه
dinner	عشاء
lamp	لمبة
burning	يحترق
trophy	كأس
compete	ينافس
competition	منافسة
newer than	أجدد من
less expensive	أقل غلاء / تكلفة
cooler	أهدأ
stay away	يبقى بعيداً
light	ضوء / خفيف / فاتح
not dark	ليس مظلم
short time	وقت قصير
rest	راحة
for example	على سبيل المثال
between	بين
pieces	قطع
volleyball	كرة طائرة
net	شبكة
bones	عظام
lights	أضواء
the Olympic Games	الالعاب الأولمبية



★ Conjugation of verbs ★

Present	Meaning	Past	P.P
lose	يخسر / يفقد	lost	lost
congratulate	يهنئ	congratulated	congratulated
decide to	يقرر أن	decided to	decided to
apologise	يعتذر	apologised	apologised
encourage	يشجع	encouraged	encouraged
wear	يرتدي	wore	worn
compete	ينافس	competed	competed
touch	يلمس	touched	touched
burn	يحرق	burned/burnt	burned/burnt
fly	يطير	flew	flown

★ Prepositions ★

on T.V.	على التلفاز	buy a ticket for	يشترى تذكرة
congratulate ..on + V.ing	يهنئ على	get a trophy for+V.ing	يحصل على كأس
used to + inf.	اعتاد أن	enjoy + V.ing	يستمتع بـ
V. be + used to + V.ing	معتاد أن	start + V.ing	يبدأ
encourage to + inf.	يشجع على	decide to + inf.	يقرر أن

★ Words & Opposites ★

turn on	يشغل / يشعل	turn off	يطفئ
light	فاتح	dark	غامق
light	خفيف	heavy	ثقيل
win	يفوز	lose	يخسر

★ Definitions ★

athletes	: Someone who is good at sports
opponent	: Someone who tries to defeat another person in a game
referee	: Someone who makes sure that the rules are followed in a game
spectators	: People who are watching a match or a game
trophy	: A prize for winning a competition or a race (a silver cup)
courts	: Places where a tennis or a basketball match is played



★ The Olympic Games ★

Professor Younis is an expert on the history of the Olympic Games.

Boy : When were the first Olympic Games held?

Professor : The first Olympic Games were held in Greece in 776 BCE so, it is a very old competition.

Boy : Have the games changed a lot since then?

Professor : Oh ! yes, There have been many changes. In the ancient Greek Olympics, there were between seven and nine sports. They are completely different now. Some sports are no longer part of the modern games.

Boy : How many sports are part of the games now?

Professor : Well, The list keeps changing, but in 2016, there were forty-one sports. Another area where there have been big changes is in the stadiums, they become huge and very modern. Furthermore, stadiums all have news technology. So, their achievements can be managed more accurately.

Boy : How different were the ancient Greek stadiums?

Professor : Ancient Greek stadiums were not very comfortable and there wasn't even fresh water for the spectators. These days, spectators from all over the world come and watch events, but in ancient Greece only Greek spectators could watch the games.

Boy : How hard is it for today's athletes?

Professor : They work very hard. In the past, athletes only used to practise hard for about ten months before the games. These days they must work hard for years before the games.

Boy : What about the prizes the athletes win? That hasn't changed, has it?

Professor : Yes, it has. Today the athletes win medals for first, second or third place. This is very different from the past when winners were given only leaves to wear on their heads.

Boy : How often were the games held in the past?

Professor : During ancient times, they were held every four years in the summer and always in the same place in Greece. However, today the Olympics are held in different countries every time. Although there have been changes, it is always a great achievement for athletes to compete for their countries at the Olympics that hasn't changed at all.



Language notes

ملاحظات لغوية

- 1 - Indoor / outdoor (Adj. صفة) - indoors / outdoors (Adv. ظرف)**
 ♪ Chess is an **indoor** game. ♪ Football is an **outdoor** game.
 ♪ I play chess **indoors**. ♪ I play football **outdoors**.
- 2- used to + inf. أعتاد أن - [V.to be] + used to + V.ing معتاد أن**
 ♪ Ahmed **used to** go out every night when he was in London.
 ♪ He **is used to** playing football at night.
- 3- light (adj) فاتح / خفيف - light (noun) ضوء / لمبة - light (verb) يشعل، حريق**
 ♪ When they went camping, they had to **light** a fire. (يشعل)
 ♪ What time does it get **light** in the morning? (ضوء)
 ♪ Can you turn the **light** on, please? (نور)
 ♪ Birds can fly easily because their bones are very **light**. (خفيف)
- 4- can (noun) علبة - can (verb) يستطيع / يعلب**
 ♪ He drank two **cans** of soda. (علبة)
 ♪ Don't worry yourself about me; I **can** take care of myself. (يستطيع)
 ♪ I can can a can in a can. (استطيع أن أعلب علبة داخل علبة)
- 5- break (noun) فسحة / راحة - break (verb) يكسر**
 ♪ She has **broken** her leg. (يكسر)
 ♪ After long lessons, we needed a **break**. (راحة)
- 6- It's fun to + inf. (فعل مصدر) / It's fun + V. ing. / difficult to + inf. فعل مصدر**
 ♪ It's **fun** to play tennis. ♪ It's **fun** playing tennis.
 ♪ I find **difficult** to learn grammar. ♪ It's **difficult** to speak as native.

Study the following

1- Kinds of sports أنواع الرياضة

Team sports رياضة جماعية	Individual sports رياضة فردية
Football /volleyball / basketball Handball /hockey / water ball	Tennis / Squash / weightlifting / judo Table tennis / boxing / swimming

2- go / play / do + [sports & activities]

	تأتي مع أسماء الأنشطة والرياضة المنتهية غالباً بـ ing :	
go	- We often go camping in the summer. - Winter is usually the best time to go skiing.	camping - sailing - horse riding - hiking dancing - swimming
play	- تأتي مع ألعاب جماعية وفردية، ذات القواعد والبطولات والمنافسات : - You need a team of 11 players to play football. - Badminton is generally played indoors. - Cricket is not played at the Olympics.	basketball - tennis - chess - hockey - squash - badminton - baseball - cricket
do	- تأتي مع الألعاب الفردية خاصة العنيفة والأنشطة الترفيهية : - All classes do gymnastics at school. - Sarah does yoga with a group of friends. - Hany is going to do judo this year.	judo - karate - yoga - gymnastics - athletics aerobics - exercises



Grammar

Necessity and Obligation

الضرورة والإلزام

الضرورة والإلزام في المضارع

1 [have / has] to + inf. مضطر أن

- تستخدم عند الضرورة والإلزام بدافع خارجي (قانون/قواعد):

- I **have to get** a passport to travel abroad.
- He **has to go** to school on time.

Negative النفي

- [don't / doesn't] + have to + inf. مصدر

- I **don't have to** hurry up. I'm not late.
- He **doesn't have to** buy a car. He has one.

Question السؤال

[Do/Does] + الفاعل + have to + inf. مصدر ؟

- **Do you have to** buy this book?
- **Does she have to** buy bread?

2 must + inf. يجب أن

- تستخدم للتعبير عن شيء مهم فعله بدافع شخصي:

- I **must study** hard this year.
- She **must see** a doctor.

Negative النفي

mustn't + inf. مصدر

- You **mustn't park** here. It's not allowed.
- He **mustn't throw** rubbish in the street.

Question السؤال

Must + الفاعل + inf. مصدر ؟

- **Must he stop** smoking?
- **Must she put on** make-up?

ملحوظات هامة جدا

have / has to + inf. مصدر = It is **necessary / obligatory** for + مفعول + to + inf. مصدر

- It is necessary for him to eat healthy food. (has to) He **has to** eat healthy food.
- It's necessary for them to wait for the train. (have) They **have to** wait for the train.
- Does she have to buy this book? (for) **Is it obligatory for her to** buy this book?

mustn't + inf. مصدر = "No + V.ing"

= It's [not allowed / forbidden / prohibited / against the law / banned] to + inf. مصدر

- The sign says "No parking here". (mustn't) - You **mustn't** park here.
- You **mustn't** smoke at the hospital. (allowed) - It's **not allowed** to smoke at the hospital.
- Must he stop smoking at hospitals? (against) - **Is it against the law** to smoke at hospitals?

الضرورة والإلزام في الماضي

1 had to + inf. كان مضطر أن

- I **had to get** a passport to travel abroad.
- He **had to go** to school on time.

Negative النفي

- [didn't] + have to + inf. مصدر

- I **didn't have to** hurry up. I wasn't late.
- He **didn't have to** buy a car. He had one.

Question السؤال

[Did] + الفاعل + have to + inf. مصدر ؟

- **Did you have to** buy this book?
- **Did she have to** buy bread?

ملحوظات هامة جدا

- [Must] ليس لها ماضي ولا مستقبل لأنها فعل ناقص.
- [have to] لها مستقبل (will have to + inf.)
- ☞ We **will have to** grow more crops in 2030.
- ☞ Will Egypt **have to** grow more crops?
- ☞ He **won't have to** read the e-mail.

It was necessary for + .. + to + = [had to] + inf.

- ☞ Did she **have to** meet him at night?
- ☞ Was it **necessary** for her to meet him?

- تستخدم [don't/doesn't] + have to + inf. = [needn't + inf.] لتعبير عن عدم الضرورة في المضارع

- You **needn't** come with me if you are busy.

قبل ما أنسى



Lessons 3&4



Exercises

Lessons 3&4

1-Complete the following dialogue:

Hamza and Ahmed are talking about the importance of water.

Hamza: Is water useful or useless ?

Ahmed: It's useful.

Hamza: (1)

Ahmed: It is used for washing, cooking and drinking

Hamza: How de we get it at home ?

Ahmed: (2)

Ahmed: Well ! Can you live without water?

Hamza: (3)

Ahmed: (4)

Hamza: We should take short showers and close the tap after using it.

2- Write what would you say in each of the following situations:

1-Your younger sister is playing with matches. Warn her.

.....

2- Your brother is going to bed without brushing his teeth.

.....

3- Your friend is driving his car and the traffic light is red.

.....

4- Your friend is moving quickly on the ladder.

.....

5- You see someone smoking in hospital.

.....

3- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1- What did you do before you came to school this morning?

a-must b- have c- have to d- had to

2- He wash his hands before he eats.

a- mustn't b- must c- have to d- hasn't

3- What did you to do for homework yesterday?

a-must b- have c- have to d- had

4- When must you home now?

a-leaves b- left c- leave d- leaving

5- Whereyour father have to go every day?

a-did b- do c- have d- does

6- I look after my brothers when mum is out.

a-had b- had to c- have d- have to



6-Whatyou have to do last weekend?

a- must b- have c- did d- had to

7- Iremember to buy a new pen today.

a- have b- must c- has to d- had

8- You study for many years to become a doctor.

a- mustn't b- don't have to c- must d- had

9-You eat before you wash your hands.

a- must b- mustn't c- have to d- had to

10- My father to go to work today because it is a holiday.

a- don't have b- doesn't have c- has d- have

11- You to buy a ticket before you can go into the stadium.

a- don't have b- doesn't have c- has d- have

12- Did you do P.E. when you were at school?

a- must b- has to c- have to d- had to

13- In those days, players hit the ball with their hands.

a- must b- has to c- have to d- had to

14- He is late for school. He take a taxi.

a- need b- must c- mustn't d- have to

15- She finish the story tonight.

a- doesn't have b- don't have c- must d- mustn't

16-You stop when the traffic is red.

a- can b- may c- must d- should

17-Children play with matches. It's dangerous.

a- must b- mustn't c- have to d- can't

18- he visit Alexandria with Ali?

a- Must b- Do c- Does d- Can

19- are long bits of metal or wood.

a. poles b. pools c. peels d. meals

20- The girls are cooking -----

a. meals b. stories c. novels d. lizards

21- We must ----- revision before exams.

a. do b. make c. doing d. making

22- To play tennis, You have to -----the ball with a racket.

a. hit b. kick c. destroy d. sleep

23- A ----- decides if something is right or wrong in a match.

a. free b. refer c. referee d. prefer

24- ----- bought the tickets and went to the stadium.

a. players b. trainers c. referees d. spectators

25- You ----- swim here, it is not allowed.

a. must b. mustn't c. should d. can



26- It is necessary, You hold a passport to travel abroad.

- a. should b. has to c. have to d. mustn't

27. Before eating we chose the meals from the

- a. list b. menu c. tour guide graph

28 – We congratulated Mona her success.

- a. on b. at c. for d. from

29 – The meal was spicy to eat.

- a. so b. to c. too d. two

30 – This table is made of wood, it is

- a. wood b. wooden c. metal d. plastic

31- There were about 20.000 at the football match.

- a. trainers b – spectators c. referees d. players

32- Mariam got a for winning the sports competition.

- a – trophy b – apostrophe c. bottle d. sword

33- The stopped the game and told the player to play again.

- a - player b. referee c. opponent d. trainer

34- Our team is playing well, but our are playing better.

- a. opponents b. spectators c. managers d – referees

35- Did they visit the museum yesterday?

- a. has to b. have to c. had to d. must

36- They buy sugar, there was no sugar at home.

- a. have to b. didn't have to d. had to d. has to

37- You be at school on time. It is a rule.

- a. must b. have to c. has to d. mustn't

38- What does Ali do?

- a. has to b. had to c. have to d. must

4- Rewrite the following using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:

1- It is not necessary to get up early tomorrow. It's a holiday, (have to)

2-It's necessary to do your homework regularly. (have to)

3- It's forbidden to park here. (must)

4- There's a sign says "No smoking". (mustn't)

5- Did you have to be kind to her? (Was it)

6- It was necessary for him to run fast. (had)



11-It's not necessary to obey your bad classmates. (don't)

10- Do you **had to** wear a uniform? (.....)

" The Olympic Games "



Unit (7)



Test (1)



Unit (7)

① Supply the following dialogue:

Azza and Aya are talking about the Olympic Games.

Azza : (1)

Aya : It started in Greece in 776 BCE.

Azza : Were they held in Egypt?

Aya : (2)

Azza : (3)

Aya : The winners get gold, silver and bronze medals.

Azza : How hard is it for today's athletes?

Aya : (4)

② What do you say in the following situations

1 –Your friend has won a gold medal.

.....

2 – You ask your friend where the Olympic game first held.

.....

3 – You express your opinion of the match

.....

③ Read the following passage and answer the questions:

We learn a lot of subjects at school. Everything we study has some uses in our life. We learn our language, Arabic, to be able to tell others what we want and understand what others tell us. We learn biology in order to tell us about living things. Foreign languages enable us to communicate with other people and to know how other people think and talk. Mathematics helps us to think. Computers are also very important because they can do sums quickly and can store information.

They can also work with words and numbers. History tells us about our country and the people of the world around us. Geography tells us about plants, animals and people, where and how they live and what they do. Exercises and games help us grow strong and keep us fit.

A) Answer the following questions:

1-Why are exercises and games important?

.....

2-Why do we learn foreign languages?

.....

3-What does the underlined word "they" refer to?

.....



B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

4- Arabic enables us to

- a- tell others what we want b- know how other people think
c- grow up d- tell us about plants

5- Maths helps us to

- a- play b- eat c- drink d- think

The Reader : Black Beauty

4 (a) Read and match:

A	B
1-Joe Green	a) was angry with Joe for taking care of Black Beauty.
2-John Manly	b) reported the rude driver to the police.
3-The factory manager	c) had to move to a warmer climate.
4-Mrs Gordon	d) was only fourteen.
	e) hit the horses with a whip.

B) Answer the following questions :

1- Why couldn't Joe brush Beauty or ginger?

.....

2- On which horse did Joe practise working first?

.....

3- How did we know that Joe was a happy boy?

.....

4- What happened that stopped Joe from singing?

.....

5- Why did John ride Beauty as fast as he could?

.....

5 Choose the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

1-When Messi scored a fantastic goal, the spectators

- a- yawned b- yelled c- exciting d- sad

2- If you make a mistake , you should

- a- apology b- apologise c- be proud d- be happy

3- I'd like to watch the who took part in the Olympics.

- a- athletes b- athletics c- spectators d- fans

4- In the past , the player take the ball out of the basket.

- a- has to b- must c- have to d- had to

5-This carriage is free of smoking. You are not to smoke.

- a- allowed b- banned c- forbidden d- ban

6-..... he have to visit Alexandria with Ali?

- a- Must b- Do c- Does d- Can



6 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) in brackets:

1- I must start my homework this evening. (have)

2- You aren't allowed to take photos in this area. (mustn't)

3-It isn't necessary for her to buy vegetables. (She)

7 Write a paragraph of (7) sentences about :

"Tennis"

Unit (7)



Test (2)



Unit (7)

1 Supply the following dialogue

Hatim: Are you interested in watching the Olympic Games competitions?

Nader : (1)

Hatim: (2)?

Nader : Michael Phelps. Do you know him?

Hatim: No, I don't. (3)?

Nader : I think he is a hero. He won 23 medals in swimming.

Hatim : Amazing. What's his nationality?

Nader : (4)

2 What do you say in the following situations

1- Your friend has just passed his driving license test.

2- You forgot to do your homework. Apologise to your teacher.

3-Your sister is going to enter a hard competition. Encourage her.



3 Read the following passage and answer the questions:

It is one of the most popular games all over the world. In this sport, you have a high net and a ball. Each team has between four and six players. You have to hit the ball to your opponent. The opponent has to hit the ball back to your side of the net. They can also hit the ball to players on their own team. Each team can hit the ball three times. Teams have to hit the ball with their hands or arms. The ball cannot touch the ground. A team scores when the opponent does not hit the ball back, or if the ball touches the ground on the opponents' side of the net.

A) Answer the following questions:

1 – What kind of sport does the writer mean?

2 – How does a team score in this sport?

3 – Can the players hit the ball to each other in this sport?

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

4- The underlined word "they" refers to

a- the net b- the ball c- the players d- the world

5-Each time can hit the ball

a- four times b- three times c-six times d- five times

The Reader : Black Beauty

4 (a) Read and match:

(A)	(B)
1. Dr. White said he would come,	a. needs to stay warm and has warm water
2. Although Black Beauty was tired	b. but his wife took his horse
3. Beauty's hair was wet	c. and he felt so hot.
4. A horse who has just run	d. He took Dr. White back to Gordon's
	e. but his son had taken his horse

B – Answer the following questions

1- Why did John ride Black beauty to another village during the night?

2- What happened to Black beauty after he returned with the doctor?

3- Do you think John was right to have a helper who is only fourteen?

4- Why do you think that the driver of the carriage near the factory was rude?

5- Why did the doctor ride Black Beauty instead of his horse?



5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d

1- You take things which don't belong to you .This is theft.

- a) must b) have to c) mustn't d) don't have to

2- We go to school yesterday because it was a national holiday.

- a) had to b) needn't c) shouldn't d) didn't have to

3- The news of the students' accident to be reported to the police at once.

- a) has to b) have to c) must d) needn't

4- Our team is playing well but our is playing better.

- a) enemy b) supporters c) opponent d) spectators

5- The must not side with any team and he has to be fair.

- a) referee b) goalkeeper c) attacker d) player

6- The weather was cold , we decided to go out for a walk.

- a) However b) But c) Although d) In addition

6 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) in brackets .

1- Nadal played well but he didn't win the tennis match. (although)

.....

2- It is unnecessary for Mariam to wait for me. (have)

.....

3- It isn't allowed to take photos her. (mustn't)

.....

7 Write a paragraph of (7) sentences about :

Mohamed Ali Rashwan is a good example of how anyone should play a sport.

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



Unit (8)

How we learn

Lessons 1&2

★ Vocabulary ★

intelligence	ذكاء
intelligent	ذكي
intelligent people	إناس أذكاء
bad for	سيء لـ
physical	بدني - فيزيائي
exercise	تمرين
amazing	مدهش
muscle/ muscles	عضلة / عضلات
breathe	يتنفس
balance	توازن
people's feelings	مشاعر الناس
nature	طبيعة
sailor	بحار
paper	ورقة / ورق
diagram	رسم بياني
moving	حركة
way	طريق
learning	التعلم
washing up	الغسيل
lie- lying	يستلقي - يكذب
prepositions	حروف الجر
Albert Einstein	ألبرت أينشتاين
take long	يستغرق وقتاً طويلاً
parts of	أجزاء من
river	نهر
favourite	مفضل
problems	مشاكل

bake a cake	يخبز تورتته
hobby	هواية
certainly	بالتأكيد
fun	متعة - مرح
painting	رسم
research	بحث
information	معلومات
online	عبر الانترنت
computer games	العاب الكمبيوتر
puzzles	ألغاز
too much time	وقت كثير جداً
healthy	صحي
offer help	يقدم المساعدة
afraid	خائف - اسف
trouble	مشكلة
matter	موضوع
effect	تأثير
scientist	عالم
in fact	في الواقع
certainly	بالتأكيد
languages	لغات
bodies	أجسام
probably	من المحتمل
environment	البيئة
stand still	يثبت في مكانه
enjoyable	ممتع
fantastic	رائع



★ Conjugation of verbs ★

Present	Meaning	Past	P.P
control	يتحكم	controlled	controlled
describe	يوصف	described	described
understand	يفهم	understood	understood
lie	يستلقي	lay	lain
lie	يكذب	lied	lied
lay	يضع - يبيض	laid	laid
ride	يركب	rode	ridden
follow	يتبع	followed	followed
dye	يصبغ	dyed	dyed
die	يموت	died	died
affect	يؤثر	affected	affected
offer	يعرض	offered	offered
spend	ينفق - يقضي	spent	spent
recycle	يعيد تصنيع	recycled	recycled

★ Prepositions ★

good at + n/V.ing	جيد في	in fact	في الواقع
good for ..	جيد لـ	parts of	أجزاء من
ready for	مستعد لـ	kind of	نوع من
important for	مهم لـ	bad for + مفعول + to + inf	سيء لـ.. أن ..
for example	على سبيل المثال	have problems with	لديه مشاكل مع
followed by	متبوع بـ ..	work out	يحل / يستنتج
talk about	يتحدث عن ..	work on	يعمل على ..

★ Words & Opposites ★

learn	يتعلم	teach	يعلم / يدرس
bad for ... / at ...	سيء لـ .. في ..	good for ... / at ...	جيد لـ .. في ..
difficult	صعب	easy	سهل
too many	كثير جداً + (اسم يعد)	too much	كثيراً جداً + (لا يعد)

★ Definitions ★

balance	: being able to stand still.
control	: to make someone or something do what you want.
puzzle	: A game that you have to think carefully



How intelligent are you?

Being very intelligent can help people to do amazing things. But what makes people intelligent? Albert Einstein was a great scientist, but in fact, he had problems with reading: he certainly was not good at everything.

Experts now think that people can be intelligent in many different ways. For example, you might be intelligent because you are very good at languages, maths or music. Some people are intelligent because they are very good at controlling their bodies. Athletes have this kind of intelligence and they can control their muscles, breathing and balance very well. Other people understand people's feelings, while others might be intelligent because they understand animals and nature. Sailors have an intelligence that makes them good at finding their way across seas or up and down rivers.

If people are intelligent in different ways, it means that they will probably learn things in different ways. Writing words on paper helps some people to learn things. Others prefer to learn by drawing pictures or diagrams. Moving or physical exercise helps some people, while others learn best by working with other people.

Language notes

ملاحظات لغوية

1- good at على .. / good for مفيد لـ / good to صالح لـ / ماهر فى ..

- ✂ Ali is good at languages.
- ✂ He is bad at writing.
- ✂ He is good to his children.
- ✂ Milk is good for babies.
- ✂ Eating too much sweet is bad for our health.

2- It's + صفة + to + inf. مصدر = V.ing + (شبه الجملة) + is + صفة + to/for + ضمير

- ✂ It is easy for you to run with some friends.
- ✂ Running with some friends is easy for you.
- ✂ It is important to talk about your problem.
- ✂ Talking about your problem is important for you.

3- فاعل + find it + صفة + to + inf. مصدر

- ✂ We find it difficult to learn Spanish.
- ✂ They find it hard to speak in front of audience. جمهور

4- (تصف الشيء / الشخص نفسه) + ing + صفة / (مشاعر الشخص) + ed + صفة

- ✂ Sarah is interested in the film.
- ✂ The film is interesting.
- ✂ Ali is boring. شخص ممل
- ✂ He is bored. يشعر بالملل

5- spend + مفعول + V.ing

- ✂ Rodina spent her time watching Indian films.
- ✂ Samira spends the holiday cleaning the apartment.



Language Functions

الوظائف اللغوية

- Talking about problems

الحديث عن المشاكل

خائف أن جملة + I'm afraid that

- I'm afraid that I have a problem using the internet.

أحد صعوبة أن فعل مصدر I find it difficult to + inf.

- I find it difficult to look for the information that I need.

المشكلة هي أن جملة + The trouble is that

- The trouble is that I spend too much time playing computer games.

Asking for help طلب المساعدة

Offering help عرض المساعدة

Can you help me + inf. مصدر ?

Do you think you can help me?

Can you do me a favour, please?

Have you got any problems?

What's the matter?

Let me see if I can help.

For example

- You are carrying a heavy bag. Ask your friend for help.

Can you help me carry this bag?

- Your friend finds it difficult to spell "Bibliotheca" مكتبة.

Let me see if I can help.



Study the following

1-do VS use [Verbs & Nouns]: أفعال وأسماء

do	experiment - research - homework - puzzle - project - work - business quiz - shopping - wrong - activities - favour - something physical - job	After getting up, he did his homework. He is doing his activities everyday. The teacher asked us to do researches. She does shopping every weekend.
use	brain - muscles - computer - mobile - the internet - a knife - a saw(tools) - money	You need to use your brain more often. Please, use your money wisely بحكمة. You should use the internet carefully.

2- If + جملة جواب الشرط , جملة شرطية

A- Zero Conditional: الحالة الصفرية (تستخدم للتعبير عن الحقائق والتجارب العلمية)

If you **put** a nail into water, it **sinks**. Water **turns** into vapour if you **heat** it.

B- First Conditional: الحالة الأولى (تستخدم للتوقع والاستنتاج)

If he **studies** hard, he **will pass** the exam. If they **play** well, they **will win**.

C- Second Conditional: الحالة الثانية (تستخدم للتعبير عن التمني / الندم / النصيحة)

If I **studied** hard, I **would answer** well. If I **were** you, I **would see** a doctor.
I **would buy** a car if I **had** 10.000\$. If I **was** rich, I **would help** the poor.



1-Complete the following dialogue

Fatema asks Hala about her mobile phone.

Fatema : What a wonderful mobile phone!

Hala : Thank you, Fatema.

Fatema : Who bought it for you?

Hala : (1)

Fatema : (2) ?

Hala : She bought it yesterday.

Fatema : (3)..... ?

Hala : She bought it for me because it was my birthday.

Fatema : How much does it cost?

Hala : (4)

2- Write what would you say in each of the following situations:

1-You see a person looking under his car. You want to know if he needs help.

.....

2- You look worried. You have a problem using the printer.

.....

3- Your brother has a problem with a school project. He asks for your help.

.....

4- A student has arrived in the class from another country. He asks for helping.

.....

5- You find it difficult to say the -ed ending of verbs correctly.

.....

6- Your family is going to fly to England in the summer. You are frightened.

.....

7- You want to learn chess, but it's quite hard to understand the rules.

.....

8- You want to do your homework, but you are finding it difficult to stop playing computer games.

.....

9- You have to send an email to my friends in England. The trouble is, you can't remember their email.

.....

10- You ask your brother to help you with the homework.

.....



3- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1- His father said that the car was difficult to because it was raining.
a- balance b- score c- control d- hit
- 2- You need strong to be good at most sports.
a- physical b- muscles c- feelings d- memory
- 3- Mona always her homework when she gets home from school.
a- makes b- walks c- uses d- does
- 4- It is important for old people to continue to their brains every day to keep them healthy.
a- cooks b- eats c- uses d- does
- 5- The scientists have some important research into climate change.
a- made b- done c- used d- eaten
- 6- My uncle a book of puzzles when he was in hospital last week.
a- did b- visited c- was d- used
- 7- You a lot of muscles when you go swimming.
a- make b- walk c- use d- do
- 8- We used my father's computer to buy the book
a- online b- offline c- line d- underline
- 9- I'm I can't go swimming because the pool is closed.
a- frightened b- terrified c- afraid d- hungry
- 10- I didn't understand this Do you know the answer?
a- physical b- puzzle c- muscle d- trouble
- 11- Did you have any, finding your way to the new school?
a- muscle b- trouble c- physical d- puzzle
- 12- Everyone should do 30 minutes of exercise each day.
a- bits b- legs c- head d- muscle
- 13- A is someone who sails on boats or ships.
a- doctor b- tailor c- sailor d- farmer
- 14- Being very can help people to do amazing things.
a- stupid b- foolish c- intelligent d- angry
- 15- Albert Einstein was a great
a- scientist b- thief c- detective d- sailor
- 16- Athletes have this kind of intelligence and they can their muscles.
a- save b- control c- beat d- sit
- 17- helps us to get more information.
a- Eating b- Running c- Playing d- Learning



18- Being very intelligent can help people many amazing things.

- a- do b- doing c- did d- done

19- What people intelligent?

- a- does b- did c- makes d- making

20- Albert Einstein was a great

- a- teacher b- scientist c- doctor d- plumber

21- Albert Einstein had problems reading.

- a- of b- with c- about d- for

22- Are you good speaking English?

- a- at b- to c- for d- in

23- Experts think that people can be intelligent in different ways.

- a- many b- much c- little d- less

24- Although he is, he fails his exams.

- a- stupid b- lazy c- intelligent d- careless

25- She is interested in numbers so she will be good at

- a- music b- maths c- history d- English

26- take part in the Olympic every four years.

- a- Teachers b- Doctors c- Athletes d- Musicians

27- It is essential for good teachers to their classes.

- a- control b- mislead c- terrify d- horrify

28- Stand still and try not to lose your or you will fall.

- a- bus b- balance c- cart d- car

29- Some sportsmen need strong to do well.

- a- music b- character c- muscles d- moustaches

30- Swimmers need to control their when they swim.

- a- breeze b- baths c- freezing d- breathing

31- understand people's feelings.

- a- Another b- Others c- Other d- Also

32- are good at finding their way across seas.

- a- Sailors b- Carpenters c- Nurses d- Electricians

33 - I am I forgot your book.

- a- frightened b- afraid c- fear d- horrified

34- The is that I spend too much time playing games.

- a- trouble b- tremble c- terrible d- trip

35- Let's do this about solving problems.

- a- match b- quiz c- class d- net



4- Read and correct the underlined words:

- 1-A tailor is someone who works on a ship. (.....)
- 2 What's the balance, Amria? You look worried. (.....)
- 3-Athletes are good at controlling their muscles and their breath. (.....)
- 4- The scientists did some experiments to measure the animals' intelligent. (.....)
- 5- It is easy to fall down on a ship, so sailors need to have very good breathing. (.....)
- 6- We make some activities in the playground. (.....)
- 7- They do muscles to fight other opponents. (.....)

5- Rewrite the following using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:

- 1- Do you have a problem? (matter)
.....
- 2- I'm afraid that I have a problem using the internet. (trouble)
.....
- 3- Can you do me a favour? (help)
.....

6- Write a paragraph of seven (7) sentences about one of the following:

- How using computers late at night can affect your sleep.
- 3 problems that people often have when they use a computer.

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



Unit (8)

How we learn

Lessons 3&4

★ Vocabulary ★

project	مشروع
idea	فكرة
parents	والدين
advice	نصيحة
useful	نافع
without	بدون
another country	دولة أخرى
make a card	يقوم بعمل بطاقة معايدة
possible	ممکن
person	شخص
science	علوم
arts	رسم
city person	شخص يحب المدينة
country person	شخص يحب الريف
body	جسم
strong	قوي
comfortable	مريح
website	موقع إلكتروني
still	ثابت - مازال
ride a bicycle	يركب دراجة
drive a car	يقود سيارة
bottle	زجاجة
science subjects	مواد علمية
environment	بيئة
important for	مهم لـ
situation	موقف
sorry	أسف
nearly	تقريباً

difference	مختلف
beach	شاطئ - بلاج
frightened	مرعوب - خائف
rule	قانون
soon	قريباً
safe/unsafe	أمن / غير آمن
healthy/unhealthy	صحي / غير صحي
address	عنوان
recordings	تسجيلات
countryside	الريف
The country	الريف
while	بينما
a while	برهة - فترة
internet	انترنت
meaning	معنى
modern	حديث
technology	تكنولوجيا
without	بدون
get home	يصل للبيت
idea	فكرة
activity	نشاط
homework	واجب منزلي
computer games	ألعاب الكمبيوتر
carefully	بعناية - باهتمام
physical exercise	تمرين بدني
group	مجموعة
climate	طقس
brain	عقل - مخ



★ Conjugation of verbs ★

Present	Meaning	Past	P.P
ask	يسأل	asked	asked
continue	يستمر	continued	continued
add	يضيف	added	added
help	يساعد	helped	helped
beat	يدق - ينبض - يهزم	beat	beaten
fly	يطير - يسافر	flew	flown
record	يسجل	recorded	recorded
discuss	يناقش	discussed	discussed
know	يعرف	knew	known
advise	ينصح	advised	advised

★ Prepositions ★

talk to + شخص	يتحدث إلي	wait for	ينتظر شيء
talk about + موضوع	يتحدث عن	think about / of	يفكر في ..
at night	في الليل	important to + inf.	مهم أن
ask for advise	يطلب النصيحة	prefer to + inf.	يفضل أن
continue to + inf.	يستمر - يتابع	make a card for	يقوم بعمل .. لـ
fly to + مكان	يسافر بطائرة	frightened of	خائف من

★ Words & Opposites ★

online	متصل بالانترنت	offline	غير متصل بالانترنت
modern	حديث / عصري	old / ancient	قديم / أزلي
comfortable	مريح	uncomfortable	غير مريح / متعب
closed	مغلق	opened	مفتوح
important	مهم	unimportant	غير هام
useful	مفيد	useless	ضار - غير مفيد

★ Definitions ★

online	: Using the internet
afraid	: Used when you are sorry to say something
sailor	: Someone who sails on boats or ships .



★ What is Salma's problem? ★

Mother : I am Salma's mother, you asked to see me! **What is the matter?**

Teacher : Thank you for coming to see me. Salma is doing well at school, but she doesn't always get good marks in her homework. I want to talk to you both about this.

Mother : **Have you got any problems Salma?**

Salma : **I am afraid that** I have a problem using the internet for my homework. **I find it difficult to** look for the information that I need.

Mother : What do you mean Salma?

Salma : When I go on the internet, I often see interesting games that I want to play online. So, I don't always do my homework.

Mother: You know you should do your homework first before you play any computer games.

Salma : **The trouble is that** I really enjoy computer games. It is quite hard to think about work when I know that I can get better at a computer game if I spend more time playing it.

Teacher: **Let me see if I can help.** Where do you keep your computer at home?

Mother : It is a laptop so she usually takes it to her bedroom. It is quiet there.

Teacher : Ask Salma to only use the internet in a room where you can see her. In that way you know that she is working not playing computer games.

Mother : Should I stop her playing all computer games?

Teacher : Children need to relax and some computer games can teach you things. So, it is not bad to play computer games after she has finished her homework. But she must do her homework first and remember it is much better to play a sport such as tennis or volley ball. Sports are good for the brain as well as the body.

Salma : I like tennis. Let me see if I can play at the sports club next week.

Teacher: **That sounds like a good idea,** Salma.

Language notes

ملاحظات لغوية

1 - affect / effect on تأثير على / يؤثر على

✂ Using computers late at night **affects** your health.

✂ The accident had **effect on** her life.

2- Make a suggestion : عمل اقتراح

- Let's + inf. مصدر

✂ **Let's** go to the club at night.

- What / How about + V.ing ..?

✂ **How about** playing football at night?

- Why don't + فاعل + inf. ...?

✂ **Why don't** you go to the park?

3- How many + معدود? / How much + غير معدود

✂ How many **times** did you go there? (**How many times** = **How often** ..?)

✂ How much **time** do you think you spend playing computer games?



Grammar

Gerund

اسم الفاعل

صيغة الـ ing

1 اسم (فاعل - مفعول) Noun

- تستخدم صيغة الـ ing كاسم (فاعل أو مفعول) :

- **Reading** is enjoyable. (فاعل subject)
- I love **reading**. (مفعول object)

2 فعل (مستمر) Verb

- تستخدم صيغة الـ ing كفعل بعد (V. to be) دليل الاستمرار :

- Ahmed is **sleeping**. (فعل مضارع مستمر)
- Sarah was **cleaning**. (فعل ماضي مستمر)

قواعد اضافة ing

1 - معظم الأفعال نضيف لآخرها (ing) : [eat-eating / carry-carrying / drink-drinking .. etc]

2 - الأفعال المنتهية بحرف (e) صامت يحدف ، وإذا لم يكن صامت لا يحدف :

صامت [use-using / write-writing / make-making / smoke-smoking / drive-driving]

غير صامت [sing - singeing / dye - dyeing / dyeing / dyeing]

ب - أما إذا انتهى الفعل بـ (ee) تبقى كما هي ولا تحذف : [see - seeing / free - freeing .. etc]

ج - أما إذا انتهى الفعل بـ (ie) تحول إلى (y) : [die-dying / tie-tying / lie-lying ... etc]

3 - الفعل المكون من مقطع واحد وينتهي بساكن يسبقه نضعاف الساكن الأخير - ماعدا (w, x, y) :

- [put - putting / run-running / sit-sitting / swim-swimming ... etc]

- [fix- fixing / play-playing / sew-sewing / row-rowing ... etc] (x, w, y) أفعال آخرها

4 - الفعل المكون من مقطعين ، والمقطع الأخير مشدداً (قوى النطق) نضعاف الساكن الأخير - أما إذا كان غير مشدداً لا يضاعف :

غير مشدداً [visit - visiting] - مشدداً [admit - admitting / commit-committing]

5 - الأفعال المنتهية بـ (e) نضعاف الحرف الأخير : [cancel-cancelling / travel-travelling...etc]

استخدامات صيغة الـ ing

1 تستخدم بعد بعض الأفعال

deny ينكر	avoid يتجنب	enjoy يستمتع
admit يعترف بـ	love يحب	hate يكره
prefer يفضل	recommend يوصي	come يأتي لأداء
go يذهب لأداء	keep يستمر في	practice يمارس
fancy يتخيل	mind يمانع	feel like يشتهي
stop يتوقف عن	suggest يقترح	finish ينتهي
imagine يتخيل	prevent يمنع	delay يعطل
like يحب	regret يندم	stand يتحمل

- Do you enjoy **swimming**?
- Huda practises **playing** the piano.
- You should avoid **meeting** bad people.
- Do you fancy **seeing** her here?
- I recommend **reading** this nice story.
- I suggest **playing** tennis.
- He admitted **stealing** my mobile.
- Would you mind **helping** me?

2 تستخدم بعد حروف الجر

- Einstein had problem with **reading**.
- Sailors are good at **finding** their way.
- You should give up **smoking**.
- Are you interested in **reading**?
- I look forward to **seeing** you.
- I apologize for **coming** late.
- I am fond of **going** to parties.
- My sister is keen on **sewing**.

مصدر - It's + صفة + to + inf.

ضمير + to/for + صفة + is + (شبه الجملة) + V.ing =

- She finds it easy to learn new languages.
- Learning new languages is easy for her.
- Talking to tourists is often difficult for me.
- It is often difficult for me to talk to tourists.



1-Complete the following dialogue:

Teacher : Today, we have learned some useful new words,

(1)

Nawal : Yes, we're ready for the questions.

Teacher : Do you need balance to ride a bicycle or to drive a car?

Nawal : (2)

Teacher : Good. Is your intelligence how good you are at doing tests or how good you are at learning and understanding things?

Randa : (3)

Teacher : That's right. The last question : do you use your muscles when you think or when you exercise?

Ola : (4)

Teacher : Very good!

2- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1- by bus is the best way for tourists to see parts of the country.

a-Travel b- Travelled c- Travelling d- travels

2- too much television is not good for your eyes.

a- Watched b- Watching c- Watches d- Watch

3- books in a car sometimes makes Nasser feel ill.

a- Reads b- Read c- To reading d- Reading

4- Mona thinks that bottles and paper is very important for the environment.

a- To recycling b- Recycled c- Recycling d- Recycle

5- Hassan and Hamdi enjoy tennis.

a-playing b- played c- to play d- to playing

6- Thank you for me.

a- help b- helped c- to help d- helping

7- You are doing more work on the than they are.

a-project b- card c- bottle d- record

8- He for the bus for a long time.

a- continued b- recorded c- saved d- waited

9- Are you a city person or a person?

a- the country b- country c- continent d- world

10- Singing is Huda's favourite.....

a- language b- sport c- subject d- activity



11- What's the , Amira? You look worried.

a-weather

b- matter

c- water

d- metre

12- Let me if I can help.

a-see

b- watch

c- look

d- drink

3- Rewrite the following using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:

1- It isn't healthy to lie in bed for a long time.

(lying)

2- Do you feel happy when you listen to music?

(listening)

3- My favourite activity is using my smart phone.

(Using)

4- Smoking isn't healthy for you.

(It isn't ...)

5- My elder brother finds it difficult to talk in French.

(Talking)

6- Cycling is fun.

(favourite)

7- Swimming is good exercise.

(to exercise)

8- It's difficult to get up early.

(Getting up)

9- Eating ice cream on a windy day isn't good idea.

(to eat)

10- Cooking is my hobby.

(a fun)

11- Does listening make you feel happy?

(Do you ...)

12- In England, it is always more expensive to travel by train than by bus.

(Travelling)

5- Read and correct the underlined words:

1- Brush your teeth is important.

(.....)

2- Smoked causes lung cancer.

(.....)

3- I found him lie against a tree.

(.....)

4- I find it difficult to finding information on the internet that I need.

(.....)

5- To read is my favourite hobby.

(.....)

6- I enjoy read under the shade of a tree.

(.....)

7- She is good at dance.

(.....)

8- Speak other languages is very useful.

(.....)



Unit (8)



Test (1)



Unit (8)

① Supply the following dialogue:

Doctor : (1)

Faten : I have a nasty headache.

Doctor : (2)

Faten : Yes, I use the computer daily.

Doctor : I advise you (3)

Faten : (4)

② What do you say in the following situations

1-You don't know how to reach the supermarket.

.....

2- You see a blind man crossing the street.

.....

3- You spilt juice on your friend's carpet.

.....

③ Read the following passage and answer the questions:

Many experts think that people first played rugby in 1823. At this time, students at Rugby School in England were playing football. Then, a boy called William Webb-Ellis took the ball in his hands and ran towards the opponents. This made a new game.

To score in rugby, teams have to run with or kick the ball to one end of the field. The ball is oval, like an egg. You have to be fast and strong to be good at playing rugby. Many players, who can weigh about 100 kilograms, are very big!

Today, rugby is very popular in many countries. About 100 countries play the sport. However, it is not as popular as football. More than 200 countries play that sport.

A) Answer the following questions:

1- What is the main idea about the passage?

.....

2-What does the underlined word "that" refer to?

.....

3- Why do you think William decided to take the ball with his hands?

.....



B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

4-An oval is

a- a shape b- a kind of football c- a kind of plastic d- a kind of egg

5- Rugby took its name from

a- a player b- a country c- a school d- an egg

The Reader : Black Beauty

④ (a) Read and match:

A	B
1- Joe Green	a) were Black Beauty's new owners.
2- John Manly	b) stayed with Black Beauty until he became better.
3- Gordon and Mrs. Gordon	c) hit the horses near the factory.
4- Earl and lady Smythe	d) stopped singing after Black Beauty became ill.
	e) had to leave England.

B) Answer the following questions :

1- Why did Joe Green have to brush Merrylegs not the other horses?

2- Why was Black Beauty not able to rest when John rode him to get a doctor in the night?

3- Was John right to be angry with Joe after Beauty became ill?
Why? Why not?

4- What happened to the man who hit the horses near the factory?

5- Why do you think John said that Joe Green "looked taller"?

⑤ Choose the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

1- You need strong to be good at most sports.

a- fingers b- toes c- muscles d- hair

2- too much TV is not good for your eyes.

a- Watching b- Watch c- Watched d- Watches

3- We used our father's computer to buy the book

a- outline b- offline c- with line d- online

4- It is an urgent must to stop here.

a- to smoke b- smoked c- smoking d- smoker

5- I didn't understand this Do you know the answer?

a- muzzle b- puzzle c- buzz d- pus

6- When will you finish the flat?

a- decorated b- decorate c- decorates d- decorating



6 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) in brackets:

1- Could you close the window?

(mind)

2- Would you like to read detective stories.

(interested)

3- I am sorry I didn't attend your birthday party.

(apologise)

7 Write an e-mail of (7) sentences about:

- Write an e-mail to your friend inviting him to attend your birthday party. Your friend e-mail is: Samy001@yahoo.com. Your e-mail is Bosy@hotmail.com.

Unit (8)



Test (2)



Unit (8)

1 Supply the following dialogue

Waleed : Why do we learn things in different ways?

Maha : (1)

Waleed : Does that mean your intelligence is different from my intelligence?

Maha : (2)

Waleed :?

Maha : Because you are good at controlling your muscles, breathing and balance but I am good at languages.

Waleed : (4)..... ?

Maha : Let me see if I can help.

2 What do you say in the following situations

1- You ask your sister if she has a problem.

2- Someone has helped you.

3- You spilled Juice on your friend's books.



3 Read the following passage and answer the questions:

Farid lived in a big house with a garden. One day, he was reading an interesting story. When it got darker, he switched on the light. Suddenly, he heard a loud cry of "Help! Help!" coming from the garden. He looked out of the window but he couldn't see anything. He heard the voice again. He thought that one of the neighbours' boys had climbed a tree and couldn't get down. He took his torch and walked to the garden. He searched it very well, but he couldn't find anybody.

Finally, he thought that someone was playing a trick on him. So he went back to the house. As soon as he sat down, he heard the sound from behind him. It was sitting on the bookshelf, a large green and red bird. It was a parrot.

A) Answer the following questions:

1- Why did he take a torch with him?

2- Where was the parrot sitting?

3- Where did Farid live?

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

4- Farid heard the voice

a- once b- twice c- three times d- four times

5- was making the loud cry of help.

a- The parrot b- Farid's friend c- Farid d- A neighbour's boy

The Reader : Black Beauty

4 (a) Read and match:

(A)	(B)
1. Joe didn't put	a. instead of warm water
2. Joe gave Beauty cold water,	b. a warm blanket on Beauty
3. Joe should have	c. Merrylegs
4. Joe shouldn't have	d. left beauty alone.
	e. stayed with Beauty.

B – Answer the following questions

1- How did Joe lack experience?

2- What did a horse need after running for a long way?

3- Why it was a must to stay and watch a horse after running?

4- What should Joe have done?

5- What happened to Black Beauty after Joe left him?



5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d

1- Using the internet means

- a . offline b. up-line c. online d. lines

2- Mona always her homework at 8 p.m.

- a. do b – does c. make d. makes

3- Salma has problems with

- a. reading b. read c. reads d. to read

4- They spent two hours exercise.

- a. to do b. do c. does d. doing

5- fact, he had problems with reading.

- a. In b. On c. At d. With

6- Everyone should do 30 minutes of exercise daily.

- a. physical b. menu c. funny d. fan

6 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) in brackets .

1- I thanked him because he helped me. (for)

2- It is better for tourists to travel by bus. (Traveling)

3- He no longer plays tennis. (stopped)

7 Write a paragraph of (7) sentences about :

"How do you spend your free time?"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



Unit (9)

The senses

Lessons 1&2

★ Vocabulary ★

senses	حواس
tongue	لسان
ear	أذن
eye	عين
hand	يد
finger	أصبع اليد
system	نظام
blind	أعمى
blind people	ناس عمي
deaf	أصم
dot	نقطة
Louis Braille	لويس برايل (مخترع)
Braille system	نظام برايل
sign	إشارة - علامة
accident	حادثة
equipment	معدات
for horses	للخيول
instead of	بدلاً من
letters	خطابات
meaning	معنى
soldier	جندي
message	رسالة
sound	يبدو - صوت
great	عظيم
reason	سبب
karate lesson	درس كاراتيه
closed	مغلق
crowded	مزدحم

electronic	الكثروني
dictionaries	قواميس
adults	البالغين
stadium	استاد
squash	لعبة الاسكواش
shape	شكل
triangle	مثلث
square	مربع
circle	دائرة
printer	طابعة
next door	الجوار
on our school trip	في رحلتنا المدرسية
tour guide	مرشد سياحي
tour	جولة سياحية
everything	كل شيء
next	القادم
orchestra	فرقة موسيقية
concert	حفلة غنائية
university	جامعة
give information	يعطي معلومات
students	طلاب
professor	استاذ جامعي
village	قرية
grandparents	الاجداد
sand	رمال
to make it easier for	ليجعله أسهل لـ
subject	مادة دراسية
person	شخص



★ Conjugation of verbs ★

Present	Meaning	Past	P.P
taste	يتذوق	tasted	tasted
hear	يسمع	heard	heard
see	يرى	saw	seen
touch	يلمس	touched	touched
feel	يشعر	felt	felt
work out	يستنبط - يحسب	worked out	worked out
improve	يحسن	improved	improved
make up	يؤلف - يخترع	made up	made up
accept	يقبل - يوافق	accepted	accepted
refuse	يرفض	refused	refused
set up	يؤسس	set up	set up
produce	ينتج	produced	produced
protect	يحمي	protected	protected
find out	يكشف - يدرك	found out	found out
hand out	نظي	handed out	handed out
give	يعطي	gave	given
sell	يبيع	sold	sold
start	يبدأ	started	started

★ Prepositions ★

(be) born in + سنة/فترة	ولد في	made in + بلد المنشأ	صنع في ...
continue to + inf	يستمر أن	made of + مادة لم تتغير	مصنوع من ...
continue + V.ing	يستمر	made from + مادة تغيرت	مصنوع من ...
change text into	يحول النص إلى	(be) used by + فاعل	استخدم بواسطة

★ Words & Opposites ★

excited	مثار / منفعل	bored	يشعر بالملل
hand out / give	يعطي	hand back / give back	يعيد
strong	قوي	weak	ضعيف

★ Definitions ★

Sign Language	: is a language that is communicated by the hand.
soldier	: a person who works to protect the country.
adult	: you are this when you are 18 or older.



★ Louis Braille ★

Louis Braille, who was born in 1809, became blind after an accident when he was three. At first, Louis went to school in his village, where his father made equipment for horses. When he was ten, he went to a school for blind children in Paris. In the school library, there were 14 books which had a system of dots instead of letters. When students touched the letters, they could work out the meaning of the words. Louis wanted to find a way to improve the system.

Then in 1821, a man called Charles Barbier visited the school. Barbier, who was a soldier, showed the students his own system of dots on paper. It was used by soldiers to read and write messages at night. Louis decided to improve Barbier's system to make it easier for blind people to use. When he was 15, he wrote his first book of signs. He continued adding more signs to his system. He also made up signs for maths and music. The signs took his name: Braille.

These days, new technology has made Braille even easier to use. Some computers, which can quickly change text into Braille, now have Braille printers. Electronic books (e-books) can also be read in Braille. You can find Braille in many different languages, all over the world. There are even Braille dictionaries so that blind adults and children can look up words and find out their meanings.

Phrasal verbs

أفعال متبوعة بحرف جر

الفعل	المعنى
set up	يؤسس - ينشئ
set off	ينطلق في رحلة
set down	يسجل - يدون
go on	يستمر
go back	يعود
go off	ينفجر
take up	يبدأ نشاط / يتعلم
take off	يقطع / يخلع
make up	يخترع - يؤلف
carry out	ينفذ
work out	يستنتج - يستنبط
find out	يكشف / يعرف معلومة
look for	يبحث عن شيء
look up	يبحث عن كلمة
hand out	يعطي - يسلم

أمثلة

- ✂ Our school was **set up** in the 1990s.
- ✂ I'd prefer to **set off** a bit earlier.
- ✂ Ali is **setting down** his memories.
- ✂ We really can't **go on** living like this.
- ✂ When do you **go back** to school?
- ✂ A pipe **went off**. The streets became wet.
- ✂ He encourages them to **take up** languages.
- ✂ **Take** your hat **off**. The plane **took off**.
- ✂ The story is unbelievable. She **made it up**.
- ✂ Ali is **carrying out** an important project.
- ✂ Waleed could **work out** the word meaning.
- ✂ I didn't **find out** about the crime until now.
- ✂ The police are **looking for** the thief.
- ✂ They **look up** words and **find out** the meaning.
- ✂ He will **hand out** information to the police.



Language Functions

الوظائف اللغوية

- Inviting people

دعوة الناس / الأشخاص

- ✂ Would you like to (go to) + المناسبة ?
- ✂ Do you want to come to + ... المناسبة ?
- ✂ I'd like to invite you to + المناسبة . [wedding/ birthday..etc] دعوة رسمية

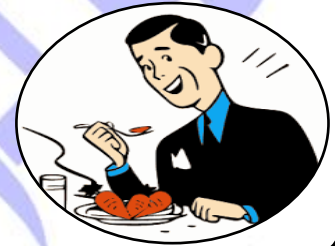
Accepting invitation قبول الدعوة

Refusing invitation رفض الدعوة

- | | |
|--|--|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ✂ I'd love to! ✂ That / It sounds great. ✂ I'd be pleased to come. | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ✂ I'm sorry ... I have a test tomorrow. ✂ I'm afraid I can't. ... I have to study. ✂ I'd love to, but I can't because |
|--|--|

For example

- You invite your friend to your sister's wedding.
- ✂ I'd like to invite you to my sister's wedding.
- You accept your aunt's invitation to the circus.
- ✂ I'd love to! ✂ That sounds great.
- You politely refuse a friend's invitation to the cinema.
- ✂ I'm afraid I can't because I have to visit the dentist.



Study the following

1- communicate in+ لغة / communicate with + شخص / communicate by+ وسيلة (يتواصل)

- ✂ My children aren't able to communicate in English.
- ✂ We need to communicate with each other.
- ✂ Sign Language is a language that is communicated by the hand.

2- (لكى) [فعل مصدر + can / could + inf. + فاعل + so that + جملة]

- ✂ He put his glasses on so that he could see the television better. ماضى
- ✂ He puts his keys behind the door so that he can find them easily. مضارع

3- help + مساعد .. أن [فعل مصدر + to + inf. / فعل مصدر + inf. + مفعول] ..

- ✂ New technology helps blind people (read) / (to read) e-books.

4- instead of بدلا من

- ✂ These books had a system of dots instead of letters.

5- made of + مادة لم تتغير / make from + مادة تغيرت / made in + مكان

- | | |
|-----------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| ✂ This door is made of wood. | ✂ The ring is made of gold. |
| ✂ Electricity is made from water. | ✂ The glass is made from sand. |
| ✂ This shirt is made in Egypt. | ✂ Her smart phone is made in Japan. |

6- (be) called : يسمى / يدعى

- ✂ That man was called Braille.
- ✂ Black Beauty's first owner was called Farmer Gray.
- ✂ The first owner that Beauty worked for was called Squire Gordon.



1-Complete the following dialogue

Samir invites his friend Ashraf to come to his birthday party.

Samir : Would you like to come to my birthday party tomorrow?

Ashraf : (1)

Samir : Why not?

Ashraf : My pen friend is going to visit Egypt.

Samir : (2)?

Ashraf : For a week.

Samir : (3)?

Ashraf : No, he's going to stay at Hilton Hotel. I've booked a room for him.

Samir : How much does it cost to book a room?

Ashraf : (4)

2- Write what would you say in each of the following situations:

1- Your friend invites you to lunch. Refuse politely.

.....

2- You want to invite your mother to a concert for Mother's Day.

.....

3- Your cousin invites you to his wedding. You accept his invitation.

.....

4- You want to invite your friend to your house this Saturday.

.....

5- A friend asks you to go to the beach this Saturday. You would like to go.

.....

6- You want a friend to go with you to the museum this Thursday.

.....

7- You invite your friend to spend a few days with you in your village

.....

8- You accept your friend's invitation for dinner.

.....

9- You politely refuse a friend's invitation to the cinema, giving a reason.

.....

10- Your friend invites you to his party, but you can't go because you will travel with your father.

.....

3- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1- Reem's family enjoyed their holiday in Nuweiba and they want to again next year.

a- go back

b- go forward

c- go on

d- go in



2-The teacher.....information about the concert.

a- handed to b- handed out c- handed off d- handed up

3- The school was40 years ago.

a- set to b- set down c- set up d- set off

4- Can you workthe meaning of these words ?

a- with b - up c- for d- out

5- How can the blind communicate.....others.

a-in b- with c- to d- for

6- The dumb can communicate with people sign language.

a-on b - off c- of d- in

7- My friend is good at making stories.

a- down b- into c- off d- up

8- If you don't know what an English word means, the word in a dictionary.

a-look at b- look up c- look after d- look for

9- Could you please the books to the students, Salma?

a- handed to b- handed out c- handed off d- handed up

10- Ahmed usually plays the violin in a / an on Tuesdays.

a- orchestra b- music c- invention d- spectator

11- That girl is , so she cannot hear you.

a- blind b- deaf c- intelligent d- tired

12- The teacher asked me to the books to the class.

a- handout b- hand up c- look up d- look out

13-You become when you are eighteen years old.

a- an adult b- a soldier c- an opponent d-a sailor

14- The tourist did not speak Arabic, but we in English.

a- handed out b- set up c- communicated d- go back

15- - Blind people use Braille to read.

a- system b- brain c- equipment d- history

16- Louis wanted to find a way to the system.

a- kill b- delete c- improve d- remove

17- You can find Braille in many different

a- sports b-languages c- buildings d- inventions

18- I visit my grandparents who live

a- outdoor b-next door c- indoor d- door

19- The audience clapped when the was over.

a- book b-break c- concrete d- concert



20-.....people can't see.

a- Deaf b- Dumb c- Blind d- Cripple

21- A a person who works to protect the country.

a- sailor b- tailor c- soldier d- farmer

22-A means using words or pictures that give information.

a- line b-site c- diet d- sign

23- Soha's story is hard to believe. I'm sure she made it

a- in b-up c- off d- at

4- Read and correct the underlined words:

1- My grandmother is blind. She can not hear anything. (.....)

2- They encourage blind students to take off sign language themselves. (.....)

3- A Blind can touch the letters so he can work up the word meaning. (.....)

4- Our school was sit up in the 1990s. (.....)

5- We need to communicate on each other. (.....)

6- A footballer is a person who works to protect the country. (.....)

7- We're going to head out information to people about the concert. (.....)

8- Babies are those who are 18 or older. (.....)

9- The barber gave us a tour of the city. He knows a lot about Egypt. (.....)

5- Rewrite the following using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:

1- The charity was started ten years ago. (set up)
.....

2- He invented a good story. (made up)
.....

3- Could you please give the books to the students? (hand out)
.....

4- I'm afraid I can't come .I'm so tired and exhausted. (sorry)
.....

5- If you don't know what a word means, find it in a dictionary. (look)
.....



Unit (9)

The senses

Lessons 3&4

★ Vocabulary ★

deaf school	مدرسة الصم
all over Egypt	فى جميع أنحاء مصر
sign language	لغة الإشارة
soldier	جندي
activities	أنشطة
both	كلاهما
slightly	قليلاً
general	عام
education	تعليم
education schools	المدارس الحكومية
charity	خير - إحسان
professor	استاذ جامعي
arrive home	يصل المنزل
possible	ممکن
Bibliotheca	مكتبة
themselves	انفسهم
special	خاص
weekly	اسبوعي
word	كلمة
huge	ضخم
excited	مثار - منفعل
recommendation	توصية - تذكية
learner	متعلم
supermarket	سوبر ماركت
recommendation	توصية - تزكية
invitation	دعوة
accept	وافق
refuse	يرفض
advice	نصيحة

Pyramids	أهرامات
camels	جمال
at all	على الإطلاق
neighbour	جار
friendly	ودود
without water	بدون ماء
picnic	نزهة
find out / discover	يكشف
country	دولة
square	مربع
circle	دائرة
triangle	مثلث
examples	مثال
Bibliotheca Alexandrina	مكتبة الاسكندرية
exhibition	معرض
historic	تاريخي
sign	لافته - إشارة
statue	تمثال
windmill	طاحونة هوائية
conclusion	خاتمة
windsurf	ركوب الأمواج
dictionary	قاموس
farm	مزرعة
exhibition	معرض
opinion	رأي
give a reason	يعطي سبب
orchestra	أوركسترا
jewellery	مجوهرات
jewels	مجوهرات



★ Conjugation of verbs ★

Present	Meaning	Past	P.P
believe	يعتقد	believed	believed
communicate	يتصل	communicated	communicated
encourage	يشجع	encouraged	encouraged
show	يعرض - عرض	showed	showed
own	يمتلك	owned	owned
plan	يخطط	planned	planned
include	يتضمن	included	included
take up	يتعلم - يفهم	took up	taken up
learn	يتعلم	learnt/learned	learnt/learned
forget	ينسى	forgot	forgotten
look up	يبحث عن	looked up	looked up
discover	يكشف	discovered	discovered
decide to	يقرر	decided to	decided to
throw	يلقي - يرمي	threw	thrown

★ Prepositions ★

take turns to + inf.	يتبادل الأدوار لكي..	live for	يعيش لمدة
would you like to + inf ?	هل تود أن ...؟	take up = learn	يتعلم
without water	بدون ماء	hand out = give	يسلم / يوزع / يعطي
move to	ينتقل إلى	set up = start	يؤسس / ينشئ
teach + مفعول + about	يعلم عن	take + وقت + to + inf	يستغرق
(be) going to + inf	سوف	get to	يصل إلى

★ Words & Opposites ★

huge	ضخم / عملاق	tiny	ضئيل / صغير جداً
refuse	يرفض	accept	يقبل / يوافق
politely	بأدب	impolitely	بوقاحة
friendly	ودود	unfriendly	أنطواني

★ Definitions ★

system	: a way of doing something.
shape	: a square, circle and triangle are examples of this.



★ The Deaf School in Cairo ★

The Deaf School in Cairo was set up in 1982 for children from all over Egypt. There are about 70 children at the school, where most of them live during the week. They go home at weekends and during the holidays.

At the school, students learn Egyptian Sign Language. They also learn reading and writing in Arabic and English, maths, science, P.E. and computer studies. The teachers at the Deaf School believe that it is really important for deaf people to be able to communicate with people who can hear. They encourage the family and friends of deaf students to take up sign language themselves at special weekly classes for people who can hear. They also plan activities where both deaf people and people-who can hear can learn about each other's lives.

More schools are now open for deaf learners all over Egypt. Moreover, slightly deaf students are now included in general education schools so that they can be with other students that hear well.

Language notes

ملاحظات لغوية

1 - teach + موضوع + about + مفعول (يعلم عن) ...

✂ That exhibition **taught** us a lot **about** history.

✂ Geography **taught** learners **about** countries all over the world.

2- invent - يكتشف / discovered - يبتكر

✂ The sailors **discovered** treasures on the island. (شيء موجود)

✂ John Logie Baird **invented** the first TV. (شيء لم يكن موجود)

✂ Edison **invented** the electricity. Columbus **discovered** America.

3- live for + مدة (يعيش لمدة) / live in + بلد (يعيش فى ..)

✂ Camels can **live for** weeks without water.

✂ Camels **live in** the desert. It's called the desert ship.

4- set up / يؤسس / يبدأ

✂ The Al Nour wal Amal orchestra was **set up** in the 1950s.

✂ Mark **set up** Facebook Company when he was 19 years old.



Grammar

Relative clause

ضمائر الوصل

ضمائر الوصل

1 Defining relative clauses

- هي التى تعطى (معلومات ضرورية) لفهم ومعرفة (ما أو من) المشار إليه ولا نضع لها فاصلة (,) .
- Ali is the person **who** I met last night.

2 Non Defining relative clauses

- هي التى تعطى (معلومات غير ضرورية) عن شيء أو شخص ولا نحتاجها حتى نفهم (ما أو من) المشار إليه، ونضع لها فاصلة (,) .
- My brother, **who** is 40, is a teacher.

Non Defining relative clauses

1- who (الذي/التي) للعاقل	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Mr Zaki, who lives next door, is a scientist. My aunt, who is dead now, was a wise. My neighbour, who is a teacher, sometimes helps me.
2- which (الذي /التي) لغير العاقل	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Elephants, which live for around 45 years, are found in Africa. The post office, which is opposite the bank, is crowded today. The house, which I am going to build, will be very large.
3- where الذي /التي/حيث (للمكان)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> I'll visit my uncle in Luxor, where he has lived since the 1970s. Hurghada, where we went last year, is an interesting place. The bank, where my brother works, is near our school.
4- when الذي/التي/عندما (للزمان)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> The Photo shows Aswan in 1990, when my parents lived there. The school, when I was a student, was clean. The village, when there wasn't TVs, was quieter than today.
5- whose الذي / التي (الملكية)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Mr Ezz, whose factory produces iron, is very rich. Hany, whose father is a surgeon, is my friend. Manal, whose hair is red, is my best friend.

ملحوظات هامة

- مع ضمائر الوصل Non defining relative clauses لا نستخدم (that) بدلا من (who-which-whom):
 - The book, **that** you gave to me, is interesting. (✗)
 - The book, **which** you gave to me, is interesting. (✓)
- لاحظ أن which تحل محل (when - where) ولكن لا بد من حرف جر:
 - The journey, **from which** Ahmed has just come, was tiring.
 - The man looked at the tree, **under which** he had often sat.
 - This cupboard, **in which** I keep my old toys, hasn't been cleaned for ages.
- يأتى حرف الجر أما قبل (which) ، أو فى آخر الجملة الوصفية:
 - The journey, **which** Ahmed has just come **from**, was tiring.

You will face it like that

كيف نحل؟

- حدد المشترك بين الجملتين (اسم/ضمير)
 - احذف المشترك من الجملة الثانية وضع ضمير الوصل المناسب.
 - نضع ضمير الوصل والجملة الثانية بعد المشترك الأول.
 - نضع الجملة الأولى بعد الجملة الثانية.
- Ahmed** is my friend. **His** father is a teacher. (whose)
Ahmed, **whose** father is a teacher, is my friend.



1-Complete the following dialogue:

Sara : I'd like to invite you to a concert next Friday.

Fareeda : I'd love to go, but I can't because (1)

Sara : OK. (2) on Saturday morning?

Fareeda : (3) , but we won't arrive home until noon on Saturday.

Sara : (4) on Saturday afternoon?

Fareeda : I'd love to That sounds great.

2- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1- My neighbour,is a teacher, sometimes helps me with my English.

a- whose b- who c- which d- where

2- The museum, is near our school, is always busy in the afternoon.

a- which b- where c- whose d- who

3- My grandmother,is dead now, was a good woman.

a- who b- whose c- which d- where

4- The man looked at the tree, under he had often sat.

a- when b- who c- where d- which

5- I've just met Madam Hashem, husband is a pilot.

a- which b- where c- whose d- who

6- The village, people work in agriculture, is very poor.

a- which b- whose c- who d-when

7- The man looked at the tree, under he had often sat.

a- who b- when c- which d-where

8- I've just met Mr. Ayman, wife is an airhostess.

a- whose b- who c- when d- which

9- The houses,the government funded, are cheap.

a- that b- when c- which d-where

10- The restaurant, we usually have lunch in , is fantastic.

a- where b- which c- who d- whose

11- My brother is a in the army الجيش.

a- sailor b- carpenter c- teacher d- student

12-My friend is good at making stories.

a- in b- at c- up d- of

13- Some computers can change text into

a- bill b- building c- bins d- Braille



14- To know meaning of an English word, use the dictionary to look it ...

a- up b- of c- out d- for

15- There were 14 books which had a system of dots instead letters.

a- in b- at c- of d- on

16- Can you work the meaning of these words?

a- with b- up c- for d- out

17- Louis wanted a way to the system.

a- prove b- improve c- proof d- improvement

18- His father used to make equipment for horses.

a- a b- an c- the d- no article

19- When was your school up?

a- set b- sat c- setting d- sit

20- The teacher asked me to the books to the class.

a- look up b- hand out c- look out d- hand up

21- Ahmed usually plays the violin in a/ an on Tuesday.

a- music b- invention c- spectator d- orchestra

22- We enjoyed visiting Mecca and we want to go again next year.

a- up b- forward c- in d- on

23- The dumb people can't so they communicate in sign language.

a- write b- eat c- play d- speak

24- I would like to you , to my birthday party.

a- invite b- invitation c- invent d- invention

25- He is too busy to your invitation to go to the cinema.

a- refuse b- accept c- agree d- disagree

26- They encourage the deaf students to take sign language.

a- with b- up c- for d- out

27- If you take up sign language, you it.

a- learn b- forget c- see d- teach

28- Someone who is deaf can't hear well .

a- slight b- light c- slightly d- tightly

29- He can't hear because he is

a- blind b- deaf c- deafness d- blindness

30- Would you like to come to the with us on Sunday?

a- reach b- leach c- beach d- bitch

31- I am it won't be possible. I have an exam.

a- sorrow b- afraid c- feared d- frightened

32- A dictionary is a book helps you to learn.

a- who b- that c- when d- where

33- My grandfather, 80 years , is still energetic.

a- who b- that c- which d- whose



3- Read and correct the underlined words:

- 1- The children, which enjoyed drawing shapes in the sand, stayed for long. (.....)
- 2- Luxor, who thousands of tourists stay every year, is near the Nile. (.....)
- 3- The mosque, who was built 500 years ago, is still in a good condition. (.....)
- 4- The secretary, which works for 8 hours a day, is very active. (.....)
- 5- This cupboard, in where I keep my old toys, hasn't been cleaned for ages. (.....)
- 6- I gave the letter to James, whose sent it to London. (.....)
- 7- She passed me the salt, when fell on the floor. (.....)

4- Rewrite the following using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:

- 1- The story is very good. It was written by a famous Egyptian. (which)
- 2- Ahmed's cousin is a doctor. He lives in Zagazig. (who)
- 3- The bank is near the school. My brother works there. (where)
- 4- Squash keeps me fit. It is my favourite sport. (which)
- 5- Our school is more than 50 years old. It has about 1,000 students. (which)
- 6- Mona received a medal. She is an excellent runner. (who)
- 7- I went to visit my cousin last week. She lives in Luxor. (who)
- 8- Maya is slightly deaf. She is learning Egyptian Sign Language. (who)
- 9- I always visit my grandparents. They live next door. (who)
- 10- The Deaf School was set up in Cairo. It is for all children. (which)
- 11- The guide gave us a good tour. He knew everything about Egypt. (who)
- 12- Sharm is an interesting place. We went there last year. (where)
- 13- Gaber is a good man. His car isn't new. (whose)



There are about 285 million people in the world who are blind or find it difficult to see. However, not many of these people can read Braille. The problem is that Braille books are not cheap. The cost of making a Braille book is four or five times more than any other book. Technology can help blind people. Some of them can listen to news and information on smart phones.

أ/ وليد الشعراوي



Unit (9)



Test (1)



Unit (9)

1 Supply the following dialogue:

Baher : (1) ?

Shady : I am afraid. I am not very keen on basketball.

Baher : What about playing football?

Shady : (2)

Baher : When can we go to the club together?

Shady : (3)

Baher : (4)?

Shady : No, I don't have sports shoes.

2 What do you say in the following situations

1-You invite your friend to a cup of tea.

.....

2-You refuse your friend's invitation to make a trip.

.....

3-You accept your friend's invitation to attend his brother's wedding.

.....

3 Read the following passage and answer the questions:

An enormous earthquake happened two hours ago in the mountains of North West Asia. The ground is still shaking every five minutes. Many houses have been damaged and many people are still inside the buildings. Hundreds of people have been killed, and thousands more have been injured. So people are trying to help each other. Doctors, nurses and soldiers have been sent from the capital. Doctors have a problem because the hospital has been damaged. Egypt is sending three helicopters with a team of doctors and nurses. Different Charities have already collected forty million pounds to buy medicine.

A) Answer the following questions:

1- How do you know that the earthquake was enormous?

.....

2-What was the problem of doctors?

.....

3- Why is Egypt sending 3 helicopters?

.....



B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

4- The money was collected to buy

a- helicopters b- computers c- medicine d- buildings

5- Doctors, nurses and soldiers have been sent from

a- Egypt b- the capital c- the sea d- the port

The Reader : Black Beauty

4 (a) Read and match:

A	B
1 – York was	a – rudely to Joe Green.
2 – Mrs. Gordon should	b – heavier than John.
3 – Dr. White was	c – the new helper at Earlshall Park.
4 – The driver spoke	d – a good rider.
	e – live in a warmer climate.

B) Answer the following questions :

1- How long did the police send the driver to the prison?

2- What was the carriage that Joe passed full of?

3- Why was Black Beauty happy although he was ill?

4- What did the doctor say when Mrs. Gordon became ill again?

5- Why do you think John Green stop singing?

5 Choose the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

1-That's the lady brother won the prize.

a- where b- which c- when d- whose

2-That is the place the police found the thief.

a- when b- where c- which d- what

3-My friend, works in a big hospital , is going to marry.

a- who b- whom c- that d- whose

4- Deaf people can in sign language.

a- speak b- talk c- listen d- communicate

5-The teacher asked the student to help him hand the homework.

a- back b- out c- up d- in

6- This piece of cheese takes the of a triangle.

a- shop b- ship c- shake d- shape



6 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) in brackets:

1- Farouk El-Baz is a genius. I admire him so much. (who)

2- I saw a cat with soft hair. (whose)

3- I like English best of all the subjects at school (which)

7 Write a paragraph of (7) sentences about:

"The problems which face blind people".

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Unit (9)



Test (2)



Unit (9)

1 Supply the following dialogue

Waleed : Fancy meeting you here! (1)

Maha : I was away on holiday. Last Monday my brother had an accident and my father sent me a telegram.

Waleed : Sorry to hear this. (2)

Maha : He's in the hospital now. He's getting better.

Waleed : That's good news but how did it happen?

Maha : (3)

Waleed : Why don't we visit him at the hospital tomorrow?

Maha : (4) because he will go out tomorrow.

2 What do you say in the following situations

1- You want to bring a drink to a guest.

2- Your sister is late. Express your worry.

3- Your friend is absent. Deduce the reason.



3 Read the following passage and answer the questions:

One day a mouse went out to find something to eat. He ran carelessly through some tall grass. He ran into a fierce lion. The lion caught the mouse. He caught him strongly and did not let him go. "Please, let me go." said the mouse. "One day I will help you". The lion laughed. "How could a little mouse help a lion?". "Very well", the lion said. "I will let you go". The mouse thanked the lion.

Three days later, the mouse was again looking for something to eat. He saw the lion under a tree. The lion was tied tightly in a net of strong ropes. The mouse had sharp teeth. He began to cut the ropes with his strong teeth. Soon the lion was free and thanked the mouse.

A) Answer the following questions:

1- Why did the mouse go out?

2- How could the mouse help the lion?

3- Why do you think the lion laughed?

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

4- The mouse was

a- lazy

b- foolish

c- foolish

d- stupid

5- The mouse cut the ropes with

a- head

b- teeth

c- tail

d- ears

The Reader : Black Beauty

4 (a) Read and match:

(A)	(B)
1- The bridge was	a - when there was a fire
2- Black Beauty enjoyed	b - broken
3- The carriage was	c - his evening food.
4- Ginger was coughing	d - high and flooded.
	f - light and easy to pull.

B – Answer the following questions

1- What was the young rider doing when his horse was brushed?

2- What would happen if Beauty continued crossing the bridge?

3- Who arrived to try to put out the fire?

4- Did Joe Green learn from his mistakes? Why?

5- What did Squire do with all horses?



Practice test (3-A)



(A) Language Functions

1- Finish the following dialogue:

Fatma is at school with her friend Lamia.

Fatma : You look worried.

Lamia : Yes, I am very worried.

Fatma : (1)

Lamia : I'm afraid that I can't find my book.

Fatma : (2) Is this it?

Lamia : Yes, it is. Thank you! We're discussing the book in my book club,
Would you like to go with me?

Fatma : (3) I like that book.

2- Write what you would say in each of the following situations:

1- Although you lost the game, you congratulate your opponent.

.....

2- You want to invite your friend to your house this Saturday.

.....

3- You see a person looking under his car. You want to know if they need help.

.....

(B) Reading Comprehension

3- Read the following, then answer the questions:

Many experts think that people first played rugby in 1823. At this time, students at Rugby School in England were playing football. Then, a boy called William Webb-Ellis took the ball in his hands and ran towards the opponents. This made a new game. To score in rugby, teams have to run with or kick the ball to one end of the field. The ball is oval, like an egg. You have to be fast and strong to be good at playing rugby. Many players, who can weigh about 100 kilograms, are very big. Today, rugby is very popular in many Countries. About 100 countries play the sport. However, it is not as popular as football. More than 200 countries play that sport.

1- What is the main idea of the passage?

.....

2- What does the underlined word "that" refer to?

.....

3- Why do you think that William Webb-Ellis decided to take the ball with his hands?

.....



- 4- An oval is a
 a- shape b- a kind of football c- a kind of plastic d- a kind of egg
- 5- Rugby got its name from a
 a- player b- a country c- a school d- an egg

(C) The Reader

4- A- Match column A with column B

(A)	(B)	
1- Joe Green a was angry with	a- Joe for taking care of Black Beauty	(.....)
2- John Manly	b- reported the rude driver to the police.	(.....)
3 The factory manager	c- had to move to a warmer climate.	(.....)
4 Mrs Gordon	d- was only fourteen.	(.....)
	e- hit the horses with a whip.	(.....)

B- Answer the following questions:

1- Why did John ride Black Beauty to another village during the night?

.....

2- What happened to Black Beauty after he returned with the doctor?

.....

3- Do you think that John was right to have a helper who is only fourteen?

.....

(D) Usage and Writing

5- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1- blind means that you cannot see.

- a -Be b -Will be c -Being d -Arm

2- My neighbour, is a teacher, Sometimes helps me with my English.

- a -whose b -who c -which d -where

3- What did you do before you came to school this morning?

- a -must b -have c -have to d -had to

4- Who is your in the tennis competition?

- a -opponent b -spectator c -inventor d -opposite

5- Hassan's father said that the car was difficult to because it was raining.

- a -balance b -score c -control d -hit

6- The teacher asked me to the books to the class.

- a- hand out b -hand up c -look up d -look out



1- Tarek is very good at tennis, He's good at basketball, too. (furthermore)

2- It is not necessary to get up early tomorrow. It's a holiday. (have to)

3- Do you have a problem? (matter)

1- The sailor stopped the football game when one of the players was hurt.

(.....)

2- What's the balance, Amria? You look worried.

(.....)

3- My grandmother is blind. She cannot hear anything.

(.....)

- A sport you like

- What a player should do to be a good sport.

[illegible]



Practice test (3-B)



(A) - Language Functions

1- Finish the following dialogue:

Fawzi is talking about sport with his friend, Munir.

Fawzi : How do you become good at basketball, Munir?

Munir : You have to be tall and fast. (1)

Fawzi : I'm not tall or fast. (2)

Munir : I'm sure that you are good at some sports. What about chess?

I'm playing a game of chess this evening. Would you like to play?

Fawzi : (3) Munir: OK, we can play another evening when you're not visiting your grandparents.

2- Write what you would say in each of the following situations:

1- A friend asks you to go to the beach this Saturday. You would like to go.

.....

2- A friend asks you why you look worried. It's because you have a problem using the printer.

.....

3- You want a friend to go with you to the museum this Thursday.

.....

(B) - Reading Comprehension

3- Read the following, then answer the questions:

There are about 285 million people in the world who are blind or find it difficult to see. However, not many of these people can read Braille. The problem is that Braille books are not cheap. The cost of making a Braille book is four or five times more than any other book. Technology can help blind people. Some of them can listen to news and information on smart phones.

There are also "talking books" which blind people can listen to. However, some blind people prefer to read. Now, you can also buy; Braille e-books. At the moment, these are difficult to make and expensive to buy. However, scientists are now working on Braille e-books. That might be cheaper than Braille books in the future. These e-books might be the best way to help blind people. That would be good news for millions of people.

A) Answer the following questions:

1- How many people have problems with seeing?

.....

2- Why do you think that Braille books are not cheap to make?

.....

3- What does the underlined word "that" refers to?

.....



B) Choose the correct answer:

4- The cost of something is how.

- a- much money you need to buy it b- long it takes to make
c- many people use it d- you make something

5- If they become cheaper, more blinds will probably use in the future.

- a- Braille books b- Braille e-books c- smart phones d- books

C- The Reader

4) A- Match column A with column B:

(A)	(B)	
1- Joe Green	a- were Black Beauty's new owners	(.....)
2- John Manly	b- stayed with Black Beauty until he became better.	(.....)
3- Gordon and Mrs. Gordon	c- hit the horses near the factory	(.....)
4- Earl and Lady Smythe	d- stopped singing after Black Beauty became ill.	(.....)
	e- had to leave England.	(.....)

B- Answer the following questions:

1- Why did Joe Green have to brush Merrylegs but not the other horses?

.....

2- Why was Black Beauty not able to rest when John rode him to get a doctor in the village?

.....

3- Was John right to be angry with Joe Green after Black Beauty became ill? Why? / Why not?

.....

(D)- Usage and Writing

5) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1- The museum,is near our school, is always busy in the afternoon.

- a- whose b- who c- which d- where

2- television for a long time is not good for you.

- a- Watch b- To watch c- Watches d- Watching

3- He wash his hands before he eats.

- a- mustn't b- must c- have to d- hasn't

4- You become when you are eighteen years old.

- a- an adult b- a soldier c- an opponent d- honest

5- The tourist did not speak Arabic, but well..... in English.

- a- handed out b- set up c- communicated d- made up

6- You need strong..... to be good at most sports,

- a- physical b- muscles c- feelings d- memory



6- Rewrite the following using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:

1- It's sunny today, but it's not very hot. (However)

.....

2- I went to visit my cousin last week. She lives in Luxor. (who)

.....

3- It isn't healthy to lie in bed for a long time. (lying)

.....

7) Read and correct the underlined words:

1- The athlete told the players to shake hands after the tennis match.

(.....)

2- There were two thousand statues watching the game at the sports stadium.

(.....)

3- Look, I've got an invention to Mona's family party next week!

(.....)

8- Write an e-mail about one of the following:

- Inviting your friend to your birthday party.

- Telling your friend what you have to and don't have to do every day at school.

.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....